# The 'Historical Records of Diān'

An Annotated Translation of Yáng Shèn's 《滇载记》

# LUDWIG M BRINCKMANN

2024

# The Yúnnán Papers

This text is part of a series of translations of historical Chinese texts concerning Yúnnán.

This series does not aim to present any new research but to allow an English-speaking audience to better understand Yúnnán's history and culture through original texts. The texts are heavily annotated, giving geographical, historical and cultural background information and references to contemporary academic discussions.

The texts in this series are currently in draft and undergoing revision. Those translations that have reached a certain state of maturity can be found on my website at

https://www.yunnanexplorer.com/translations/

This document was compiled on 27th July 2024. The latest version of this document is available at https://yunnanexplorer.com/download/nanzhao/dianzaiji.pdf © 2021–2024 Ludwig M Brinckmann All rights reserved.

This work is licensed under a Attribution-NonCommercial-NoDerivatives 4.0 International (CC BY-NC-ND 4.0) and may be only be distributed in unmodified form and with this copyright notice included, see https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc-nd/4.0/.

# 

This document is work in progress, this copy was compiled on 27th July 2024.

The latest version of this document is available at https://yunnanexplorer.com/download/nanzhao/dianzaiji.pdf

Because of the many links provided, this document works best as an electronic copy.

To contact the copyright holder for any queries or comments, please write to: ludwigbrinckmann@gmail.com.

# Contents

1	Intro	oduction	:	5
2	Abou	ut this Translation		7
3	Anno	otated Translation		8
	3.1	Stories from Āiláo	8	8
	3.2	The Six Zhào		9
	3.3	The Three Kingdoms Period	10	С
	3.4	The Nánzhào Rulers		1
		The 1st Generation: Xìnúluó 细奴逻		1
		The 2nd Generation: Luōshèng 罗晟		2
		The 3rd Generation: Shèngluópí 盛逻皮		2
		The 4th Generation: Píluōgé 皮罗阁		2
		The 5th Generation: Géluōfèng 阁罗凤		3
		The 6th Generation: Yìmóuxún 异牟寻		4
		The 7th Generation: Xúngéquàn 寻阁劝		7
		The 8th Generation: Quànlóngshèng 劝龙晟		7
		The 9th Generation: Quànlìshèng 劝利晟		
		The 10th Generation: Quànfēngyòu 劝丰佑		
		The 11th Generation: Shìlóng 世隆		8
		The 12th Generation: Lóngshùn 隆舜		С
		The 13th Generation: Shùnhuàzhēn 舜化贞		1
	3.5	Great State of Chánghé		1
	3.6	Great State of Tiānxīng		2
	3.7	Great State of Yìníng		3
	3.8	The Dàlĭ Kingdom		3
		The 1st Generation: Duàn Sīpíng 段思平		3
		The 2nd Generation: Duàn Sīyīng 段思英		5
		The 3rd Generation: Duàn Sīliáng 段思良		6
		The 4th Generation: Duàn Sīcōng 段思聪		6
		The 5th Generation: Duàn Sùshùn 段素顺		7
		The 6th Generation: Duàn Sùyīng 段素英		7
		The 7th Generation: Duàn Sùlián 段素廉		8
		The 8th Generation: Duàn Sùlóng 段素隆		8
		The 9th Generation: Duàn Sùzhēn 段素真		8
		The 10th Generation: Duàn Sùxīng 段素兴		8
		The 11th Generation: Duàn Sīlián 段思廉		9
		The 12th Generation: Duàn Liányì 段廉义		9
		The 13th Generation: Duàn Shòuhuī 段寿辉		9
		The 14th Generation: Duàn Zhèngmíng 段正明		9
		The 15th Generation: Duàn Zhèngchún 段正淳	3	1
		The 16th Generation: Duàn Zhèngyán 段正严	3	1

		The 17th Generation: Duàn Zhèngxīng 段正兴	32
		The 18th Generation: Duàn Zhìxīng 段智兴	32
		The 19th Generation: Duàn Zhìlián 段智廉	32
		The 20th Generation: Duàn Zhìxiáng 段智祥	33
		The 21st Generation: Duàn Xiángxīng 段祥兴	33
		The 22nd Generation: Duàn Xīngzhì 段兴智	33
	3.9	The Duàn Clan Route Commanders	34
		The 1st Generation: Duàn Shí 段实	35
		The 2nd Generation: Duàn Zhōng 段忠	35
		The 3rd Generation: Duàn Qìng 段庆	35
		The 4th Generation: Duàn Zhèng 段正	36
		The 5th Generation: Duàn Lóng 段隆	36
		The 6th Generation: Duàn Jùn 段俊	36
		The 7th Generation: Duàn Yì 段义	36
		The 8th Generation: Duàn Guāng 段光	36
		The 9th Generation: Duàn Gōng 段功	38
		The 10th Generation: Duàn Bǎo 段宝	41
		The 11th Generation: Duàn Míng 段明	44
	3.10	Preface to the 'Historical Records of Diān'《滇载记》《滇载记序》	47
4	Gloss	sary	49
5	Refe	rences	73
Inc	lex		76

# Illustrations

1	'Shēngān Wearing Flowers in His Hair'《升庵簪花图》	6
2	Statue of Yang Shen	
3	The 《滇载记》(I)	
4	The 《滇载记》 (II)	
5	The 《滇载记》(III)	
6	The Duàn clan family tree	24
7	The 《滇载记》 (IV)	26
8	The Gāo clan family tree	30
9	The 《滇载记》 (V)	36
10	The 《滇载记》 (VI)	37

# 1 Introduction

The '*Historical Records of Diān*'《滇载记》 by the exiled scholar Yáng Shèn 杨慎 is the earliest of the Míng dynasty period 'unofficial histories', i.e. private reconstructions of Yúnnán's local history. Completed in 1525 CE, it marks the beginning of a process<sup>(1)</sup> that culminated in the '*Unoffical History of Nánzhào*'《南诏野史》.

Yáng Shèn, \*1488–†1557, also known by his literary name Shēngān 升庵, was Míng court official, who, after critizing the emperor, was exiled to remote Yǒngchāng 永昌 in western Yúnnán in 1524 CE, where he spent the rest of his life.<sup>(2)</sup> The prolific scholar, writer, and poet left a volumnious work that was later considered important enough to be included in the Qīng dynasty '*Complete Library of the Four Treasuries*' 《四庫全书》 library collection.<sup>(3)</sup>

Yáng Shèn was, in modern parlance, quite a *character*: Ihor Pidhainy, in the introduction to his comparison of various biographies of Yáng Shèn, characterizes him:

Yang Shen (1488–1559), a mid-Ming poet, scholar and exile lived a life that came to inhabit the Chinese consciousness during the late imperial period. The role he played in national politics, his stature as a scholar and his eccentricities in exile fascinated and annoyed the scholarly class. Yang can be said to be an excellent example of how a life story is told and transformed by those who came after him, how a life story is itself affected by the context of the day, and how what was most sublime for one generation became a scholarly pursuit of local scholars three hundred years later. (Pidhainy (2011))

He continues,

Yang's image ran the gamut from cultural hero to immoral and degenerate drunkard. [...] the creation of Yang Shen's persona was in part the work of Yang himself. He was the main source for many of its aspects, shaping what was known of him from Yunnan. However, there is to be drawn a division between the acts he was known for and the works that he wrote. The former involved a theatricality that was necessary in part to survive the emperor's wrath, the latter was his shaping and commenting on the Chinese literary tradition. Both left a legacy. Among the stories that clung to the legend of Yang Shen, two stand out. First, there is his infamous parading through the streets of the market, with flowers in his hair and wearing make-up. Chen Hongshou, the late Ming artist, captured the mood of this brilliantly in a painting in which Yang stands, seemingly befuddled, in a clearing with a couple of women attending him. (Pidhainy (2011))

For the painting by Chén Hóngshòu 陈洪绶, \*1598-†1652, mentioned here called 'Shēngān Wearing Flowers in His Hair' 《升庵簪花图》 see illustration 1. It bears the inscription:<sup>(4)</sup>

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>(1)</sup> Yáng Shèn contributed to many local histories, such as the '*Mù Clan Illustrated Genealogy*'《木氏图谱》 around 1545 CE, see Lian Ruizhi (2019), p. 132.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>(2)</sup> Actually, he spent considerable time travelling the province and lived in Gāoyáo 高峣 on the western side of Lake Dian 滇池, see Pidhainy (2011), p. 10.

<sup>(3)</sup> For his work see Yáng Shēngān 杨升庵 (2002) and online https://zh.m.wikisource.org/zh-hans/升菴集\_(四庫全書本)). (accessed 12th July 2024).

 $<sup>^{(4)}\,</sup>$  For a detailed analysis of the painting, see Yi Lidu (2011).



Illustration 1: Painting by Chén Hóngshòu 陈洪绶 called 'Shēngān Wearing Flowers in His Hair'《升庵簪花图》 Source: https://zh.wikipedia.org/zh-tw/File: 升庵簪花图.jpg

杨昇庵先生放滇时,双髻簪花,数 女子持尊,踏歌行道中 When Yang Sheng'an was in exile in Dian (Yunnan), he wore flowers in both hair coils, accompanied by several females with wine vessels, singing and dancing on the road. (Translation by Yi Lidu (2011))

Yáng Shèn and his works made not only an indelible contribution to the formation of a Yúnnánese identity, but achieved nationwide fame that continued to grow over the centuries. Pidhainy concludes,

Yang's effect on the local scholars was so great that, beyond the creation of a local identity, Zhang Fengshu wrote in a postface to Yang's works that the Dian people admired him to such an extent that they viewed him as their first teacher [...]. That this process is still ongoing might be suggested in the active scholarship on the part of self-identified Yunnan scholars. (Pidhainy (2011), p. 24)

In his ancestral temple on the western side of Kūnmíng 昆明, a statue to him survived into the early 20th century, which Joseph Francis Rock included in his '*The Ancient Na-khi Kingdom of Southwest China*', see illustration 2.<sup>(5)</sup>

As the '*Historical Records of Diān*' 《滇载记》 was completed just after Yáng Shèn's arrival in Yúnnán, it must be seen as reflecting his early understanding and interpretation of the region's history.<sup>(6)</sup>

<sup>(5)</sup> His ancestral temple has been restored and is now a museum, however the statue that Joseph Francis Rock photographed seems to have been lost.

 $<sup>^{(6)}\,</sup>$  For his later poetic work on Yúnnán, see Pidhainy (2005).

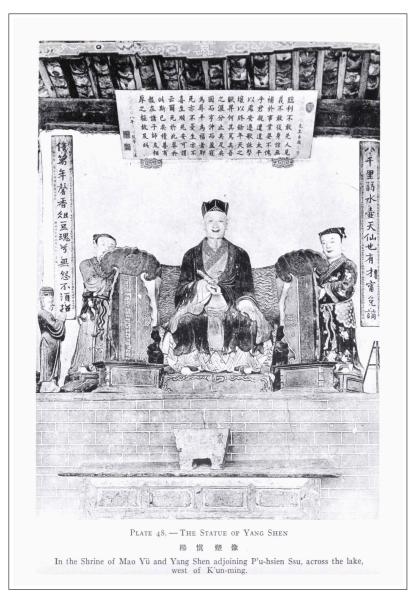


Illustration 2: Statue of Yang Shen Source: Rock (1947), vol. 1, plate 48

# 2 About this Translation

The '*Historical Records of Diān*'《滇载记》 survives in many copies. The earliest I have been able to find in a library catalogue is a blockprint from 1544  $CE^{(7)}$  held at the National Central Library of Taiwan.<sup>(8)</sup>

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>(7)</sup> Míng Jiājìng Jiǎchén 明嘉靖甲辰.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>(8)</sup> https://aleweb.ncl.edu.tw/F/TFUFXKIVT75AUAAL488R9BYJ6XUK946ACK5AX3FIHMC41AEXGC-33195?func=full-set-set&set\_number=005070&set\_entry=000018&format=999. I have not seen this copy and it does not seem to have been digitized.

The text of the 《滇载记》 is contained in the multi-volume critical edition of historical material regarding Yúnnán 《云南史料丛刊》, <sup>(9)</sup> which according to the introduction is based on a 1605 CE print.

The only publicly online available scan of the book that I have been able to find is a 1936 CE published collection of historic texts containing several works.<sup>(10)</sup> The provenance of this copy is unclear, it contains a number of errors that appear to have crept in when this edition was prepared. The illustrations included here are from that book. It appears that the digitally available text<sup>(11)</sup> is based on that copy.

The Chinese text used here has been copied from the CText version, corrected using the 《云南史料 丛刊》 whenever I noticed obvious errors.

The text is also included in his collected works, Yáng Shēngān 杨升庵 (2002), vol. 2, pp. 207–. This text also contains annotations to the text.

A further edition of the text, with copious annotations, can be found in Liào Déguǎng 廖德广 (2016), pp. 71–88. Where the annotations point to factual errors in the text, I have included them in the footnotes.

The work does not have section titles, I have added them to provide some structure.

I am not aware of an English translation.

At the end I have added a translation of an introduction to the text by Jiāng Lóng 姜龙, written in 1543 CE as it includes some additional information on the sources for this text. This introduction is included in Fāng Guóyú 方国瑜 (1998), vol. 4, p. 756 and in Wáng Wéncái 王文才 (1985), pp. 50–52.

# **3** Annotated Translation

# 3.1 Stories from Āiláo

The first part<sup>(12)</sup> is based on the '*Biographies of Āiláo*'《哀牢传》, the earliest extant mythological history of Yúnnán, written during the Western Hàn 西汉.

	滇域末通中国之先,有低牟苴者,	When Diān was not yet in contact with China, there was Dīmóujū,
	居永昌哀牢之山麓[今金齿地]。	who lived in Yǒngchāng at the foot of the Āiláo Mountains [today's
		Jīnchǐ region].
	有妇曰沙壹,浣絮水中,触沈木,若	There was a women called Shāyī. When she was washing clothes
记5	有感,是生九男,曰九隆族。	in the water, she touched a sunken log which seemed to be alive.
		Later she gave birth to nine boys, who were called the Jiǔlóng tribe.
	种类滋长,支裔蔓衍,窃据土地,散	When they had all grown up, their descendants spread out, occupy-
	居溪谷,分为九十九部。	ing the lands, living scattered in the mountain valleys, and split
		into ninety-nine tribes.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>(9)</sup> Fāng Guóyú 方国瑜 (1998), vol. 4, pp. 756–765.

滇载i

 <sup>&</sup>lt;sup>(10)</sup> Wáng Yúnwǔ 王云五 (1936), available at https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:NLC416-o6jhoo8429-16916\_%E5%A4%A7%E
 o6jhoo8429-16916\_%E5%A4%A7%E7%90%86%E8%A1%8C%E8%A8%98.pdfi2th July 2024.
 <sup>(11)</sup> https://ctext.org/wiki.pl?chapter=588873 (accessed 11th July 2024).

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>(12)</sup> see illustration 4.

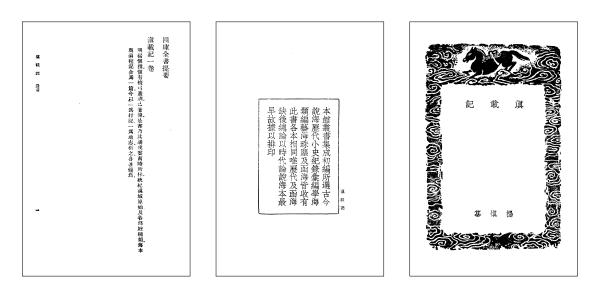


Illustration 3: The《滇载记》(I) Source:《大理行记及其它五種》 1936

# 3.2 The Six Zhào

Then <sup>(13)</sup> follows an introduction of the six *zhào* 六诏, the principalities around Lake Ěrhǎi 洱海 before their unification into Nánzhào. The text appears based on the much more detailed Táng dynasty '*Gazetteer of Yúnnán*' 《云南志》.

其渠酋有六,各号为诏,夷语谓诏 为王。 其一曰蒙舍诏[今蒙化府],其二曰浪

穹诏[今浪穹县],其三曰邓脸诏[今邓 川州],其四曰施浪诏[今浪穹县蒙和 次之地],其五曰摩紫诏[今丽江府], 其六曰蒙巂诏[今建昌]。 They had six chiefs, called *zhào*, as in the  $Y'_{\ell}$  language they call a ätic 10 king *zhào*.

The first was called Méngshè *zhào* [today's Ménghuà prefecture], the second was called Làngqióng *zhào* [today's Làngqióng county], the third was called Dèngliǎn *zhào* [today's Dèngchuān prefecture], the fourth was called Shīlàng *zhào* [today the territory of Làngqióng icounty's Ménghécì], the fifth was called Mózǐ *zhào*[today's Lìjiāng prefecture], and the sixth was called Méngxī Zhào [today's Jiànchāng].

*l*13: 邓脸诏] This is a variant writing of Téng Dàn 證赕.

115: 摩紫诏] This is a variant writing of Móxiē Zhào 磨些诏.

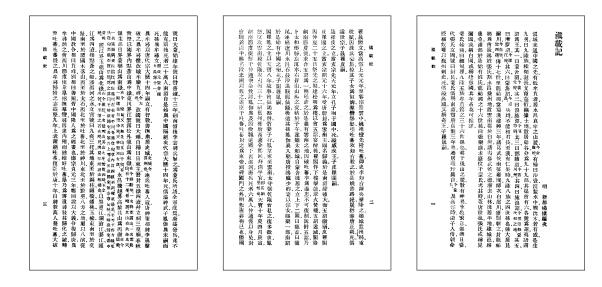
*l*16:蒙巂诏] The《大理行记及其它五種》 edition wrongly uses a different character for Xī 巂.

*r*16: Ménghécì ] unclear name.

<sup>(13)</sup> see illustration 4.

*l*12–13: 浪穹] In《大理行记及其它五種》edition this is written as Làngshī 浪施, which is clearly a mistake, corrected according to Fāng Guóyú 方国瑜 (1998), vol. 4, p. 757.

*l*17–18: today's Jiànchāng ] Liào Déguǎng 廖德广 (2016), p. 73 points out that this is wrong, it was located in what is now northern Wēishān 巍山 and Yàngbì 漾濞.



# Illustration 4: The《滇载记》(II)

Source:《大理行记及其它五種》1936

兵将不能相君长。

至汉,有仁果时,九隆八族之四世 孙也,强大,居昆弥川[今白崖定西 岭]。 Their military leaders could not overcome each other to become souverain.

During the Hàn dynasty there was the period of Rénguŏ, who was a 4th generation offspring of the eighth Jiǔlóng, he was mighty and powerful and lived in Kūnmí valley [today's Báiyá Dìngxī range].

# 3.3 The Three Kingdoms Period

Then<sup>(14)</sup> follows a passage based on the '*Records of the Three Kingdoms*'《三国志》narrating the story of Zhūgé Liàng 诸葛亮.

	传十七世,至龙佑那,当蜀汉建兴	This continued for seventeen generations until Lóng Yòunà. In the
滇载记 25	三年,诸葛武侯南征雍闓,师次白	3rd year of Shǔ Hàn's Jiànxīng era, Zhūgé Marquis of Wǔ made
	崖川,获闓斩之,封龙佑那为酋长,	his southern campaign against Yong Kǎi, the master stopped
	赐姓张氏,割永昌益州地,置云南	at Báiyá valley, captured Kǎi and executed him, appointed Lóng
	郡于白崖。	Yòunà as chief and granted him the name Zhāng, he split the lands
		of Yǒngchāng and Yìzhōu, and established Yúnnán commandery
		in Báiyá.
	诸夷慕武侯之德,渐去山林,徙居	The $Y_i$ all admired the virtue of the Marquis of Wů, abandoned

*r* 24–25: In the 3rd year of Shǔ Hàn's Jiànxīng era ] 225 CE.

<sup>(14)</sup> see illustration 4.

10

r 25–26: Zhūgé Marquis of Wǔ made his southern campaign against Yōng Kǎi ] i.e. Zhūgé Liàng 诸葛亮'S southern expedition.

平地,建城邑,务农桑。	the forests and moved to the flat lands, established settlements,
	farmed and practiced sericulture.
诸部于是始有姓氏。	All the tribes began at this time to form clans.
龙佑那之十六世孙,曰张乐进,求	The 16th descendant of Lóng Yòunà was called Zhāng Lèjìnqiú, he 滇载记 35
逊位于蒙氏。考其时,盖唐世也。	abdicated in favour of the Méng clan. This was during the Táng.
张氏或称昆弥国,或称白国,或称	The Zhāng clan was also called state of Kūnmí and also called Bái
建宁国,其年系莫可推详。	kingdom and also called state of Jiànníng, their calendar system
	cannot be understood.

# 3.4 The Nánzhào Rulers

Then<sup>(15)</sup> follows the genealogy of the Méng clan 蒙氏, i.e. the later rulers of Nánzhào.

### The 1st Generation: Xìnúluó 细奴逻

From the early history of the clan leader Zhāng Lèjǐnqiú, the story moves on to Xìnúluó 细奴逻, here written as Xìnúluō 细奴罗, the ancestor of the Méng clan 蒙氏.

苴萬之三十六世孙也。the fifth tribe of the Jiǔlóng, a 36th generation descendant of Móujū.耕于巍山之麓。He farmed below mount Wēi.数有神异,孳牧繁息,部众日盛,代 张氏立国号曰封民。There were an number of auspicous omens, breeding cattle pro- duced much offspring, the people were flourishing, so the Zhāng clan established a state called Great Fēng People's Kingdom.蒙氏伪称南诏,实唐贞观三年也。The Méng clan called themselves Nánzhào, that was in the 3rd year of the Táng Zhēnguān era.迁居珑玗图山 [今蒙化]。They moved to Lóngyútú Shān [today's Ménghuà].及高宗时, 遣子入侍,朝命授细奴 罗以巍州刺史。Then at the time of Gāozōng, he sent his son to serve at the court, inspector.死, 伪谥高祖, 又称奇王。After his death, he was given the name Gāozǔ and was called king	蒙氏始兴,曰细奴罗,九隆五族,牟	When the Méng clan began to rise, [their ruler] was called Xìnúluō,	滇载记 4o
耕于巍山之麓。 数有神异,孳牧繁息,部众日盛,代 张氏立国号曰封民。He farmed below mount Wēi.There were an number of auspicous omens, breeding cattle pro- duced much offspring, the people were flourishing, so the Zhāng (at established a state called Great Fēng People's Kingdom.)蒙氏伪称南诏,实唐贞观三年也。The Méng clan called themselves Nánzhào, that was in the 3rd year of the Táng Zhēnguān era.迁居珑玗图山 [今蒙化]。 及高宗时,遣子入侍,朝命授细奴 罗以巍州刺史。Then at the time of Gāozōng, he sent his son to serve at the court, inspector.	苴萬之三十六世孙也。	the fifth tribe of the Jiùlóng, a 36th generation descendant of	
数有神异,孽牧繁息,部众日盛,代 张氏立国号曰封民。There were an number of auspicous omens, breeding cattle pro- duced much offspring, the people were flourishing, so the Zhāng clan established a state called Great Fēng People's Kingdom.蒙氏伪称南诏,实唐贞观三年也。The Méng clan called themselves Nánzhào, that was in the grd year of the Táng Zhēnguān era.迁居珑玗图山 [今蒙化]。 及高宗时,遣子入侍,朝命授细奴 罗以巍州刺史。Then at the time of Gāozōng, he sent his son to serve at the court, inspector.		Móujū.	
张氏立国号曰封民。duced much offspring, the people were flourishing, so the Zhāng 真載记 45 clan established a state called Great Fēng People's Kingdom.蒙氏伪称南诏,实唐贞观三年也。The Méng clan called themselves Nánzhào, that was in the 3rd year of the Táng Zhēnguān era.迁居珑玗图山 [今蒙化]。 及高宗时,遣子入侍,朝命授细奴 罗以巍州刺史。Then at the time of Gāozōng, he sent his son to serve at the court, 滇載记 50 the court issued an edict to appoint Xìnúluō as Wēizhōu regional inspector.	耕于巍山之麓。	He farmed below mount Wēi.	
蒙氏伪称南诏,实唐贞观三年也。clan established a state called Great Fēng People's Kingdom.蒙氏伪称南诏,实唐贞观三年也。The Méng clan called themselves Nánzhào, that was in the 3rd year of the Táng Zhēnguān era.迁居珑玗图山 [今蒙化]。 及高宗时,遣子入侍,朝命授细奴 罗以巍州刺史。They moved to Lóngyútú Shān [today's Ménghuà].Then at the time of Gāozōng, he sent his son to serve at the court, 滇载记 50 the court issued an edict to appoint Xìnúluō as Wēizhōu regional inspector.	数有神异, 孳牧繁息, 部众日盛, 代	There were an number of auspicous omens, breeding cattle pro-	
<ul> <li>蒙氏伪称南诏,实唐贞观三年也。</li> <li>The Méng clan called themselves Nánzhào, that was in the 3rd year of the Táng Zhēnguān era.</li> <li>迁居珑玗图山 [今蒙化]。</li> <li>及高宗时,遣子入侍,朝命授细奴</li> <li>罗以巍州刺史。</li> <li>Then at the time of Gāozōng, he sent his son to serve at the court, 滇载记50 the court issued an edict to appoint Xìnúluō as Wēizhōu regional inspector.</li> </ul>	张氏立国号曰封民。	duced much offspring, the people were flourishing, so the Zhāng	滇载记 45
近居珑玗图山 [今蒙化]。of the Táng Zhēnguān era.近居珑玗图山 [今蒙化]。They moved to Lóngyútú Shān [today's Ménghuà].及高宗时,遣子入侍,朝命授细奴Then at the time of Gāozōng, he sent his son to serve at the court, 滇载记 50罗以巍州刺史。the court issued an edict to appoint Xìnúluō as Wēizhōu regional inspector.		clan established a state called Great Fēng People's Kingdom.	
迁居珑玗图山 [今蒙化]。They moved to Lóngyútú Shān [today's Ménghuà].及高宗时,遣子入侍,朝命授细奴Then at the time of Gāozōng, he sent his son to serve at the court, 演载记50罗以巍州刺史。the court issued an edict to appoint Xìnúluō as Wēizhōu regional inspector.	蒙氏伪称南诏,实唐贞观三年也。	The Méng clan called themselves Nánzhào, that was in the 3rd year	
及高宗时, 遣子入侍, 朝命授细奴 罗以巍州刺史。 Then at the time of Gāozōng, he sent his son to serve at the court, <sub>漢载记 50</sub> the court issued an edict to appoint Xìnúluō as Wēizhōu regional inspector.		of the Táng Zhēnguān era.	
罗以巍州刺史。 the court issued an edict to appoint Xìnúluō as Wēizhōu regional inspector.	迁居珑玗图山 [今蒙化]。	They moved to Lóngyútú Shān [today's Ménghuà].	
inspector.	及高宗时, 遣子入侍, 朝命授细奴	Then at the time of Gāozōng, he sent his son to serve at the court,	滇载记 50
	罗以巍州刺史。	the court issued an edict to appoint Xìnúluō as Wēizhōu regional	
死,伪谥高祖,又称奇王。 After his death, he was given the name Gāozǔ and was called king		inspector.	
	死,伪谥高祖,又称奇王。	After his death, he was given the name $G\bar{a}oz\check{u}$ and was called $king$	

*l* 47: 唐贞观三年] should be 唐贞观二十三年, see Liào Déguǎng 廖德广 (2016), p. 73. *l* 49: 珑玗图山] This is a variant writing of Lóngyú Shān 龙于山, the *tú* 图 appeared in texts after the Yuán dynasty, see Hé Jīnlóng 何金龙 (2015).

 $r_{\rm 50:}\,$  at the time of Gāozōng ]  $\,$  Táng emperor Gāozōng ruled 649–683 ce.

 $r_{53}$ : Gāozǔ ] The term Gāozǔ 高祖 is only used for the founding emperor of a dynasty.

r 47–48: in the 3rd year of the Táng Zhēnguān era ] this would be 629 CE, but Liào Déguǎng 廖德广 (2016), p. 71 points out that it should be the 23rd year, i.e. 649 CE.

r 49: Lóngyútú Shān ] The meaning of the name is unclear, Hé Jīnlóng 何金龙 (2015) argues that it was a deliberate invention of characters to evade taboos and that the term signifies Lóngyú 龙舆, i.e. 'dragon's carriage'.

r53-54: king Qí] This is also the title given to him in the 'Illustrated History of Nánzhào'《南诏图传》.

 $<sup>^{(15)}\,</sup>$  see illustration 4.

滇载记 <u>55</u>	子罗晟嗣。	<b>Qí.</b> His son Luōshèng was his heir.
	The 2nd Generation: Luōshèng 罗卢	灵
	罗晟攒立,当高宗上元元年。	Luōshèng ascended the throne, that was in the 1st year of Gāozōng's Shàngyuán reign.
	至睿宗景云中,姚州蛮先附吐蕃。	Until Táng Ruìzōng's Jǐngyún reign, the <i>Mán</i> of Yáozhōu were sub- ordinated to Tǔbō.
滇载记 6o	御史李知古请兵击降之,筑城置州 县,重税赋。	The censor Lǐ Zhīgǔ requested troops to attack and subdue them, he fortified walled towns and established prefectures and counties, and imposed heavy tax burdens.
滇载记65	因诛其豪巂,掠其子女为奴婢,群 蛮怨怒,引吐蕃攻知古,杀之。于 是,姚巂路绝。	Because he executed their aristocracy in Xī, carried off children and women as slaves, the <i>Mán</i> were discontent and indignant, and lead Tǔbō to attack Zhīgǔ, killing him. So then the road between Yáo and Xī was blocked.
	晟犹奉唐正朔。 死伪谥世宗,子晟罗皮嗣。	Shèng still honoured the Táng calendar. When he died he was given the title Shìzōng, his son Shèngluōpí was his heir.

### The 3rd Generation: Shèngluópí 盛逻皮

The next ruler was Shèngluópí 盛逻皮, here written as Shèngluōpí 晟罗皮.

滇载记 <sub>70</sub>	晟罗皮之立,当玄宗先天元年。	Shèngluōpí ascended the throne, that was in the 1st year of
		Xuánzōng's Xiāntiān reign.
	立孔子庙于国中,死谥威成王,子	He established a temple for Kŏngzĭ in the middle of the state, when
	皮罗阁嗣。	he died he was given the title king Wēichéng, his son Píluōgé was
		his heir.

#### The 4th Generation: Píluōgé 皮罗阁

Then came Píluōgé 皮罗阁, ruled 728–748 CE. With apparent approval of the Táng, he unified the six *zhào* to one polity under his rule. The corresponding legend that he burned the other leaders in the Sōngmíng tower 松明楼 makes here an early appearance.

<sup>163:</sup> 巂] This character is written in many different forms, here in conformance with 《云南史料丛刊》.

*l*<sub>7</sub>0: 玄宗先天元年] Should be see 玄宗开元元年, see Liào Déguǎng 廖德广 (2016), p. 74.

 $r_{56-57}$ : in the 1st year of Gāozōng's Shàngyuán reign ] 674 CE.

r 58: Until Táng Ruìzōng's Jǐngyún reign ]  $\,_{710}$  CE.

r70–71: in the 1st year of Xuánzōng's Xiāntiān reign ] $\,$  712 CE, but should be 713 CE.

皮罗阁之立,当玄宗开元十六年,	When Píluōgé took power, in the 16th year of the Kāiyuán reign of	滇载记75
受唐册封,为云南王,赐名归义。	Táng dynasty emperor Xuánzōng, he was invested with titles, was	
	appointed king of Yúnnán and given the name Guīyì.	
于是,南诏浸强大,而五诏微弱。	Then Nánzhào gradually became powerful, while the other five	
	zhào were weak.	
皮罗阁因仲夏二十五日,祭先之期,	As the 25th day of mid-summer was the time to make sacrifices	滇载记 8o
建松明为楼,以会五诏,宴醉后,罗	to the ancestors, Píluōgé erected the Sōngmíng tower, assembled	
阁佯下楼,击鼓举火焚楼,五诏遂	the five <i>zhào</i> . After they had eaten and were drunk, Luōgé feigned	
灭。	something to go downstairs, beat the drums, lit a fire to burn the	
	tower, the five <i>zhào</i> perished.	
阁赂剑南节度使,求合五诏为一,	Gé bribed the military commissioner of Jiànnán, requesting to	滇载记 85
朝廷许之。于是,尽有云南之地。	unite the five <i>zhào</i> into one, the court permitted this. From then	
	on he controlled the lands of Yúnnán.	
因破吐蕃,卒为边患,不可复制。	Because of the conflict with Tǔbō, soldiers created havoc in the	
	border regions, and it was impossible to restore rule.	
既并五诏,乃卜太和形胜,左洱水,	So he annexed the five <i>zhào</i> . An omen favoured the location of	滇载记 go
右苍山,山海之交,结于子午,遂筑	Tàihé, with Ěrshuĭ on the left and Cāngshān on the right, where	
太和城。	mountains and lake met was a meridian, so there they built the	
	walled town of Tàihé.	
自蒙舍徙居之,立上下二关,曰龙	They moved from Méngshè to live there, established two gates,	
首,曰龙尾,连陷邓川、永昌、石鼓,	Shàngguān and Xiàguān, called Lóngshǒu and Lóngwěi, and	滇载记 95
沙追赕、龙怯赕。	then conquered Dèngchuān, Yǒngchāng, Shígǔ, Shāzhuī Dàn, and	
	Lóngqiè Dàn.	
后遣其孙凤伽异入朝,唐授鸿胪少	Later, he sent his grandson Fèngjiāyì to court, the Táng appointed	
卿,妻以宗女,赐乐一部,南诏于是	him as ceremonial minister and vice minister, gave him a imperial	
始有中国之乐。	daughter as wife, <b>conferred him a musical troupe</b> , from then on	滇载记100
	Nánzhào had the music of China.	
死,子阁罗凤嗣。	When he passed away, his son Géluōfèng succeeded him.	

# The 5th Generation: Géluōfèng 阁罗凤

Géluōfèng 阁罗凤 broke with the Táng, leading to a long conflict.

阁罗凤之立,以天宝八年。

Géluōfèng was enthroned in the 8th year of Tiānbǎo.

 $l_{75}$ : 玄宗] Fāng Guóyú 方国瑜 (1998), vol. 4 notes that in the copy the edition is based on, the name is written as Yuánzōng 元宗, this was to avoid a taboo character.

<sup>195:</sup> 邓川] This is written as Liáochuān 遼川, but should mean Dèngchuān 邓川, see Fāng Guóyú 方国瑜 (1998), vol. 4, p. 757.

 $r_{75-76:}$ 16th year of the Kāiyuán reign of Táng dynasty emperor Xuánzōng ] $_{728}$ се.

r80: the 25th day of mid-summer ] i.e. the 6th month. This is the day, the Bái ethnic group 白族 celebrate their annual torch festival 火把节 today.

*r* 100: conferred him a musical troupe ] This group of musicians is referred to again when Nánzhào submits to China fifty years later, see page 16.

*r* 103: 8th year of Tiānbǎo ] 749 CE.

滇载记 105	故事酋长谒都督偕妻子行,凤挈家 至云南。	It was custom that the chief pay a visit to the commander-in-chief with his wife and children, so Fèng took his family with him to <b>Yúnnán</b> .
滇载记110	太守张乾拖皆私之,复多徵求,凤 怒,反攻云南,杀乾拖,取夷州三十 二,陷巂州,获唐西泸令郑回,拜清 平官[即其国承相也]。	The grand protector Zhāng Qiántuō took private interest in [his wife], soliciting many times, Fèng was angry, rebelled and attacked Yúnnán, killed Qiántuō, and occupied thirty-two regions of the <i>Yí</i> , took Xīzhōu, captured the Táng commandant of Xīlú Zhèng Huí
滇载记 115	天宝十年夏四月庚寅,剑南节度使 鲜于仲通,将命致讨,凤伽异及段 俭魏,逆战于西洱河,唐兵死者六 万人,仲通仅以身免。	and made him prime minister [that is that state's prime minister]. In the 4th month of the 10th year of Tiānbǎo, <i>gēngyín</i> , the Jiànnán military commissioner Xiānyú Zhòngtōng, ordered a punishment expedition, Fèngjiāyì and Duàn Jiǎnwèi faced them in battle at Xīěr Hé, sixty thousand Táng toops died, Zhòngtōng barely saved his life.
	封俭魏为清平,赐名段忠国,以旌 之,遂臣于吐蕃,封之为东帝,刻碑 国门之外,明叛唐非得已也。	He made Jiǎnwèi prime minister, granted him the name Duàn Zhōngguó, gave him honours, and he became a vassal of Tǔbō, was granted the title of eastern emperor, <b>carved a stele outside the cap-</b> <b>ital's gate</b> , explaining that he had no choice but to rebel against the Táng.
	俭国号曰大蒙,始建年号曰赞普钟。	Jiǎn changed the state's name to Dàméng, and began a new reign called Zànpǔzhōng.
滇载记 125	十三年,剑南留后李宓,将兵击之, 为蒙氏所诱,全军没焉。 唐益发兵,竟不能克,前后死者二 十万人。	In the 13th year, the caretaker of Jiànnán Lǐ Mì lead troops to attack them, the Méng clan tricked them and the whole army drowned. The Táng sent ever more troops, but could not defeat him, from beginning to end two hundred fifty thousand men died.
滇载记 1 <b>3</b> 0	南诏自是始于中国隔绝矣。 代宗大历十四年死。 伪谥神武,子凤伽异未嗣而死,孙 异牟寻立[僭改元赞普钟七,长寿十 一]。	Nánzhào from then on became separated from China. He passed away <b>in the 14th year of the Dàlì reign of Dàizōng</b> . His illegitimate posthumous name was Shénwǔ. As his son Fèngjiāyì had died before he succeeded, his grandson Yìmóuxún took power. [He illegitimately changed the reign to Zànpǔzhōng <b>seven</b> [ <b>years</b> ], Chángshòu eleven [years]].

## The 6th Generation: Yìmóuxún 异牟寻

Yìmóuxún 异牟寻, ruled 779-808 CE, submitted again to the Táng.

*l*122: 赞普钟] variant writing of Zànpǔ Zhōng 赞普锺.

*l*131: 七] should be 十七, see Liào Déguǎng 廖德广 (2016), p. 74.

*r* 106: Yúnnán ] here referring to Yáozhōu.

*r*112: In the 4th month of the 10th year of Tiānbǎo,  $g\bar{e}ngyin$  ] 999 CE.

r119-120: carved a stele outside the capital's gate ] that is the 'Déhuà Stele' 《德化碑》.

*r*124: In the 13th year ] 754 CE.

*r* 129: in the 14th year of the Dàlì reign of Dàiz $\overline{o}$ ng ] 779 CE.

*r*132–133: seven [years] ] should be seventeen [years].

异牟寻以唐代宗大历十四年嗣立, 有智数,善抚众,居史城[史城,今 喜州也],连兵吐蕃入寇。

唐神策都将李晟,击破之,异牟寻 惧,改城羊[征志作牟] 驗苴咩[今大 理],改国号曰大理,自称曰日东王, 僭封五岳四渎,并立祠,三皇庙,春 秋致祭。

以国界内点苍山为中岳, 东川界江 云露松外龙山为东岳 [在今禄劝州, 一名绛云露山,一名云龙山,有十二峰 皆峭拔,其山有共命鸟冗],银生部日 界蒙乐山为南岳 [在今乐甸, 又名无量 山,其山千仞,有一殿,摇摇柱自空中 来,天帝取天女处],永昌腾越界高黎 共山为西岳 [在今腾冲。一名昆仑隅, 东临浓江,西临龙川,左右有平川,名 鸟穹甸。草卉贯四叙不凋,瘴气最恶。冬 雪,至春方融。夏秋,雾甸炎炽,商贾 愁怨,为之谣曰:「冬时欲归来,高黎其 上雪。夏秋欲归来,无柰穹甸热。春时 欲归来,囊中资粮绝。]],丽江界玉龙 山为北岳 [在今丽江, 一名耸雪山, 其 山九峰,雪贯四时,玉立万仞,千里望 之,若在咫尺,与蜀松州诸山相接也]。

Yìmóuxún succeeded him and was enthroned in the 14th year of Táng emperor Dàizōng's Dàlì reign, he was cunning and apt at 滇载记135 governing his people, he resided in Shichéng [Shichéng is today's Xĭzhōu], he joined forces with Tǔbō to plunder. The Táng Shéncè general Lǐ Shèng attacked and defeated him, Yìmóuxún was afraid and moved his capital to Yángdàn's Jūmiē [today's Dàlĭ], changed the name of the state to Dàlĭ, and called 滇载记140 himself the King of the Eastern Sun and misapproprated the five peaks and four rivers, and erected an ancestral hall, a Three Emperor temple, where in spring and autumn rites were conducted. He declared that within the borders of his state Diancang Mountains was the Central Marchmount, the Dongchuan border river 滇载记145 flowing from Yúnnán to Sōngwài's Lóng mountain as the eastern mound [in today's Lùquàn prefecture, also called Jiàngyúnlù mountain or Yúnlóng mountain, there are twelve precipitous peaks, and on their mountains are many double-headed birds.], Yínshēng region border Ménglè mountain as the southern mound [in today's Lèdiàn, also 滇载记150 called Wúliàng Mountains, its mountains [rise] a thousand rèn, there is a temple with a swaying pillar hanging in the air, the place where the lord of heaven took a celestial woman.], Yongchang and Téngyuè borders Gāolígòng Mountains mountains as the eastern mound [in today's Téngchōng, also called the borders of Kūnlún, in the east it is close to 滇载记 155 Nóng river, in the west close to the Lóngchuān river, around it are flat areas, called Niǎoqióng Diàn. The grass and plants never wither throughout the four seasons, the miasmas are extremely bad. In winter it snows, only in spring it melts. In summer and autum, the fields are foggy and scorching hot, the merchants complain bitterly, there is the saying: 'If 滇载记16o

you want to return in winter, on top of Gāolí is snow, if you want to return in summer or autumn, the heat is unbearable, if you want to return in spring, the resources in your bag have been exhausted.']. On the border with Lìjiāng is Jade Dragon mountain as northern mound [in today's Lìjiāng, also called the lofty snow mountain, its mountains have

nine peaks, there is snow throughout the four seasons, the jade [cliffs] are very steep, one can see it from a thousand li, as if it was close and

1139: 羊 [征志作牟] 驗苴咩 ] In: 牟驗苴咩

*r*149: double-headed birds ] Buddhist birds

滇载记165

r134–135: in the 14th year of Táng emperor Dàizōng's Dàlì reign ] 779 СЕ.

r138: Shéncè general ] i.e. imperial general.

*r*138: Lǐ Shèng ] \*727–†793.

r139: Yángdàn's Jūmiē ] Variant writing of Yángjūmiē 阳苴哶.

*r* 140–141: called himself the King of the Eastern Sun ] Liào Déguǎng 廖德广 (2016), p. 75 points out that this was a title given to him by Tǔbō 吐蕃.

 $r_{141-142}$ : five peaks and four rivers ] The five peaks and four rivers 五岳四渎 refer to China's sacred perimeter, so Nánzhào also claiming such sacred sites was considered preposterous.

以黑惠江、澜沧江,潞江、丽江为四 读载记170 渎。 招载记170 渎。 招载记170 渎。 招载记170 渎。 名子文址,南至于铜柱铁桥、蟠桃玉榆, 东南至于交址,南至于骠国水落山, 直载式175 西至于太石,西北至于吐蕃,北至 于神川,东北至于黔巫,八方之地 属以八演,从中国教令,都曰苴咩, 别都曰善阐,皆中国降人为之经画 也。	bridge in the east it reaches iin, in the west to Shénchuān, <b>to the eighth</b> s called Jūmiē,
<ul> <li>德宗贞元三年,郑回说以大义,令复归唐,异牟寻然之。</li> <li>离西川节度使韦皋招抚群蛮,寻因求人的附,而犹结好吐蕃,皋乃为书遗寻,叙其归化之诚,转至吐蕃,吐蕃疑之,异牟寻归附之志益坚。</li> <li>九年,上表请绝吐蕃,复臣于唐。</li> <li>十年,自将数万人袭吐蕃,大破之,</li> </ul>	esubmit to the an amnesty to l aligned with king of his sin- became suspi- rith Tǔbō, and men to attack
遺其弟献图纳贡,及吐蕃所颁金印, 请复号南诏。Tǔbō, dealing it a great defeat, then he sent his your bring maps as tribute, and the golden seal conferred asked him to restore the name Nánzhào.演載记 195唐以其功,遺使册之,赐银窠、黄金 印,王北面跪受之。宴使者,出玄宗 所赐器物,指老笛工、歌女曰:「皇 帝所赐龟兹,惟二人在耳。」使者 曰:「南诏当深思祖考,子孙勿替, 属载记 200Because of his contributions, the Táng then sent a insignia, conferred him a silver box with a golden knelt facing north to receive it. At the banquet enve ted with utensils granted by Xuánzōng, he pointe flute player and the female singer, saying: 'Of the [m演載记 200尽忠皇唐。」对曰:「敢不敬使者之Guīzī granted by the emperor, only these two are still	an <b>envoy</b> with seal, the king oy was presen- ed out the old usicians from]

*r* 171: 水] The 《大理行记及其它五種》 edition has *yǒng* 永, which makes no sense, corrected according to Fāng Guóyú 方国瑜 (1998), vol. 4, p. 758.

r174: with flat peaches and jade elms ] Pántáoyùyú 蟠桃玉榆?

r177: Wūqián] Wūqián 巫黔.

r 177–178: to the eighth scroll ] refers to eighth of the the nine parts of China in the expression Jiǔzhōu 九州, referring to Liángzhōu 梁州, see Herrmann (1922).

*r* 181: In the 3rd year of Táng Dézōng's Zhēnyuán reign ] 787 CE.

*r* 189: In the 9th year ] 793 CE.

*r* 191: In the 10th year ] 794 CE.

r195: envoy] i.e. Yuán Zī 袁滋.

命!」	voy said: 'Nánzhào deeply considers his ancestors, his descendants	
	may never decline, forever faithful to the emperor.' He answered:	
	'I am not worthy to receive the envoy's orders!'	
死伪谥孝恒,改元二[见龙、上元],	He passed away, his illegitimate posthumous name was Xiàohéng,	
子寻阁劝嗣。	he had two reign periods [Jiànlóng and Shàngyuán], his son 滇载记 205	
	Xúngéquàn succeeded him.	

# The 7th Generation: Xúngéquàn 寻阁劝

### Xúngéquàn, ruled 808–809 CE.

寻阁劝以唐德宗贞元十五年立。	Xúngéquàn was enthroned in the the 15th year of Táng emperor	
	Dézōng's Zhēnyuán reign.	
死,子劝龙晟立	He passed away, his son Quànlóngshèng was enthroned.	
[伪谥孝文,改元应道]。	[His illegitimate posthumous name was Xiàowén, he began the Yìngdào	滇载记 210
	reign.].	

## The 8th Generation: Quànlóngshèng 劝龙晟

## Quànlóngshèng, ruled 809-816 CE.

劝龙晟以唐宪宗元和元年立, 淫虐	Quànlóngshèng was enthroned in the 1st year of Táng emperor	
不道,其臣嵯颠杀之,而立其弟劝	Xiànzōng's Yuánhé reign, he was intemperate and cruel, without	
利晟。	dào, his official Cuódiān killed him and enthroned his younger	
	brother Quànlìshèng.	滇载记 215
谥曰幽,改元龙兴。	His posthumous name was Yuēyōu, he began the Lóngxīng reign.	

# The 9th Generation: Quànlìshèng 劝利晟

### Quànlìshèng, ruled 816–823 CE.

劝利晟以唐宪宗元和元年立。	Quànlìshèng was enthroned in the 1st year of Táng emperor Xiàn-	
	zōng Yuánhé reign.	
死,伪谥靖王,子晟丰佑立,改元全	He passed away, he illegitimate posthumous name was Jìngwáng,	
义。	his son Shèngfēngyòu was enthroned, he began the Quányì reign.	滇载记 220

*l* 212: 唐宪宗元和元年] The《大理行记及其它五種》edition has some mistakes here, corrected according to the《云南史料丛刊》. Liào Déguǎng 廖德广 (2016), p. 75: should be 唐宪宗元和四年. *l* 217: 唐宪宗元和元年] Liào Déguǎng 廖德广 (2016), p. 75: should be 唐宪宗元和十一年.

*r*207: 唐德宗贞元十五年] Liào Déguǎng 廖德广 (2016), p. 75: should be 唐宪宗元和三年 *r*207-208: in the the 15th year of Táng emperor Dézōng's Zhēnyuán reign] 799 CE, but should be 808 CE. *r*212-213: in the 1st year of Táng emperor Xiànzōng's Yuánhé reign] 806 CE, should be 809 CE. *r*214: Cuódiān] this refers to Wáng Cuódiān 王嵯颠.

*r* 217–218: 1st year of Táng emperor Xiànzōng Yuánhé reign] 806 CE, but should be see 816 CE, Liào Déguǎng 廖德广 (2016), p. 75: should be 唐宪宗元和三年

#### The 10th Generation: Quànfēngyòu 劝丰佑

Quànfēngyòu 劝丰佑, ruled 823-859 CE, is here written as Shèngfēngyòu 晟丰佑.

	晟丰佑以穆宗长庆四年立。	Shèngfēngyòu was enthroned in the 4th year of Táng emperor Mùzōng's Chángqìng reign.
	趫敢善用其下。 文宗太和三年,西川节度使杜元颖,	He was agile and couragous and good at using those below him. In the 3rd year of Táng dynasty emperor Wénzōng's Tàihé reign,
滇载记 22 <u>5</u>	不恤士卒,有流入蛮境者,蛮衣食 之。由是,尽得蜀之虚实。与其臣嵯 颠,遂谋入寇。	the Xīchuān military commissioner Dù Yuányǐng did not care about his soldiers, there were some who fled into the territory of the <i>Mán</i> , the <i>Mán</i> gave them clothes and food. Because of that, they learned about the situation in Shǔ and his official Cuódiān then schemed to invade and plunder.
滇载记 230	以蜀卒为乡道,袭陷邛、戎、巂三州, 引兵径入成都,取诸经籍,大掠子 女工技数万人,及珍货而还。南诏工 技、文织自是与中国将矣。	Using Shù soldiers to lead the way, they attacked and captured the three prefectures Qióng, Róng, and Xī, and led soldiers to rap- idly advance on Chéngdū, capturing the classics and scriptures, enslaved tens of thousands of children, women, craftsmen and skilled people, precious goods and then they returned. The skills of Nánzhào in crafts and arts, writing and weaving were from then on comparable with China.
滇载记 <b>24</b> 0	丰佑乃遣使上表请罪元颖,朝廷以 李德裕代之。 德裕保障有方,索南诏所掠百姓, 得四千人。 丰佑死。伪谥昭成,子世隆立,改元 二,保和、天启。	<ul> <li>Fēngyòu then sent an envy to the emperor with a memorial blaming Yuányǐng, the court appointed Lǐ Déyù to replace him.</li> <li>Déyù's protection was appropriate, he searched for those people abducted by Nánzhào, and obtained four thousand men.</li> <li>Fēngyòu passed away, he illegitimate posthumous name was Zhāochéng, his son Shìlóng was enthroned, he began two reigns Bǎohé and Tiānqǐ.</li> </ul>

#### The 11th Generation: Shìlóng 世隆

Shìlóng 世隆, \*844, ¥859, †877.

世隆之立,以唐武宗会昌十三年。

初韦皋开蜀,清溪道以通群蛮入贡, 又选子弟聚之成都,教之书数以羁 縻之,而军府不时给其饩须,南诏 因是不肯入贡。

### Shìlóng was enthroned in the 13th year of Táng emperor Wǔzōng's Huìchāng reign.

Earlier Wéi Gāo had opened Shǔ, the Qīngxī pass was the road for the Mán to bring tribute, and he also selected young men to gather in Chéngdū teaching them the classics in order to make them vassals, and the military adminstration frequently gave them provi-

r 221–222: in the 4th year of Táng emperor Mùzōng's Chángqìng reign ] 824 CE.

*r* 224: In the 3rd year of Táng dynasty emperor Wénzōng's Tàihé reign ] 829 CE.

r244–245: in the 13th year of Táng emperor Wǔzōng's Huìchāng reign ] that would be 853 CE, but that does not make any sense: Táng emperor Wǔzōng only ruled until 846 CE, Shìlóng 世隆 was enthroned in 859 CE.

r246: Qīngxī pass] The Qīngxī pass 清溪关 was a key pass on the road from Chéngdū 成都 to Lake Ěrhǎi 洱海, exact location unclear.

*r* 247: young men ] literally children and younger brothers.

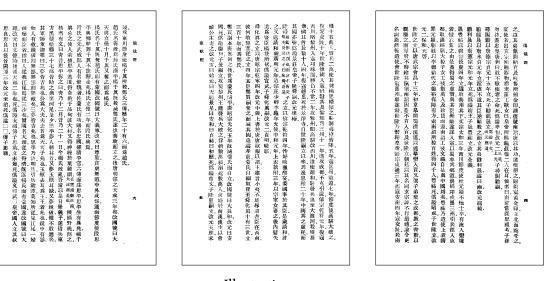


Illustration 5: The《滇载记》(III)

Source:《大理行记及其它五種》1936

及世隆立,朝廷以其名同玄宗讳, 不行册礼,谕令更名谢恩,然后遣 使,会世隆寇巂州,事遂寝世隆乃	sions, Nánzhào so was unwilling to pay tribute. Then Shìlóng was enthroned, the court considered his name a vi- olation of the name Xuánzōng, and did not travel to invest him, ordered him to change his name out of gratitude, later they sent an	滇载记 25o
僭称皇帝。	envoy, causing Shìlóng to plunder Xīzhōu, after this Shìlóng then illegitimately called himself emperor.	滇载记 255
懿宗咸通三年,西寇安南。	In the 3rd year of 's Xiántōng reign, in the west they plundered	供我比 255
四年,寇交址,杀虏几十五万人,留 兵二万,使其将杨思缙据之,溪洞	Ānnán. <b>In the 4th year</b> , he plundered Jiāozhĭ, killed and captured more than one hundred fifty thousand men, twenty thousand stationed	
夷獠皆降。	troops, and sent his general Yáng Sījìn to occupy it, the Xīdòng <i>Yíláo</i> were all subjugated.	滇载记 26o
五年,寇邕州,败还。	In the 5th year, he plundered Yōngzhōu, was defeated and re- treated.	
七年,节度使高骈大破之,复定交 址。	In the 7th year, the military commissioner Gāo Pián dealt them a large defeat, and reestablished Jiāozhǐ.	滇载记 265
十年,世隆倾国入寇,陷犍为、及黎、 雅、嘉三州。	In the 10th year, Shìlóng led the country to invaded, captured Jiānwèi, and the three prefectures of Lí, Yǎ and Jiā.	
十一年,进攻成都,不克,引还。	In the 11th year, he advanced and attacked Chéngdū, without success, then retreated.	

*r* 256: In the 3rd year of 's Xiántōng reign ] 862 CE.

 $r_{25}8$ : In the 4th year ]  $\,86_3$  CE.

*r* 262: In the 5th year ] 864 CE.

*r* 264: In the 7th year ] 866 CE.

*r* 266: In the 10th year ] 869 CE.

*r* 268: In the 11th year ] 870 се.

滇载记 270	僖宗乾符元年,复寇西川,陷黎州,	In the 1st year of Xīzōng's Qiánfú reign, he sacked Xīchuān again,
	入寇邛崃关,胜负不常。	captured Lízhōu, invaded and plundered Qiónglái pass, but with
		varying success.
	二年,攻雅州,闻高骈改西川,遣使	In the 2nd year, he attacked Yǎzhōu, when he heard that Gāo Pián
	请和。	attacked Xīchuān, he sent an envoy asking for peace.
滇载记 275	骈发兵追至大渡河,杀获甚众,擒	Pián sent out troops to chase him to the Dàdù River, killed or cap-
	其酋长数十人。	tured a great many, and captured several dozen of his leaders.
	四年,复寇越,死于景净寺。	In the 4th year, he sacked Yuèxī again. He passed away at Jĭngjìng
		temple.
	自世隆嗣立以来,为边患殆二十年,	From Shìlóng succession onwards twenty dangerous years passed
滇载记 28o	中国为之虚耗,而其国亦弊。	in the border regions, China's costs were high, so the country
		suffered.
	伪谥景庄皇帝,子隆舜嗣,改元建	His illegitimate posthumous name was emperor Jǐngzhuāng, his
	极。	son Lóngshùn succeeded him, and changed the reign to Jiànjí.

#### The 12th Generation: Lóngshùn 隆舜

Lóngshùn 隆舜, ruled 877-897 CE.

	隆舜[《通鉴》作「芷」,误也。南诏名,皆	Lóngshùn [In the 'Comprehensive Mirror for Aid in Government' written
滇载记 285	父子相承,世隆之子曰隆舜,近是]之	with $zh\check{\iota}$ , an error. In the Nánzhào names each father is linked to his son,
	立,以僖宗乾符四年。	Shìlóng's son was called Lóngshùn, this is obvious.] was enthroned in
		the 4th year of Xīzōng's Qiánfú reign.
	性好畋猎酣宴,委国事于其臣。	By his nature he enjoyed hunting and feating and left the state af-
		fairs to his officials.
滇载记 290	是岁请和,许之。	As he was young, he asked for peace, this was granted.
	又迭请和亲。	He also repeatedly asked for intermarriage.
	广明元年,遣宗正少卿李龟年充使。	In the 1st year of Guǎngmíng, he sent the chamberlain for the im-
		perial clan vice minister Lǐ Guīnián to serve as envoy.
	中和元年,上表款附。	In the 1st year of Zhōnghé, he submitted a memorial to be a vassal.
滇载记 295	三年,以宗室女妻之。	In the 3rd year, he was given an imperial daughter as wife.
	后内嬖失道,为竖臣杨登所弑。	Later he lost the trust of his inner circle and was killed by the lowly
		official Yáng Dēng.
	伪谥宣武,子舜化真嗣,改元二,贞	His illegitimate posthumous name was Wǔxuān, his son

1298: 宣武] Liào Déguǎng 廖德广 (2016), p. 76: should be Wǔxuān 武宣.

*r* 294: In the 1st year of Zhōnghé ] 881 CE.

r 270: In the 1st year of Xīzōng's Qiánfú reign ]  $\,$  874 ce.

 $r_{273}$ : In the 2nd year ]  $\,875$  CE.

 $r_{277}$ : In the 4th year ]  $8_{77}$  CE.

r286–287: in the 4th year of Xīzōng's Qiánfú reign ] $\,$  877 се.

 $r_{292}$ : In the 1st year of Guǎngmíng ] 880 CE.

*r* 295: In the 3rd year ] 883 CE.

r 298: Wǔxuān] corrected according to Liào Déguǎng 廖德广 (2016), p. 76.

明、嵯耶。

Shùnhuàzhēn succeeded him, he had two reign periods, Zhēnmíng and Cuóyé.

滇载记 300

# The 13th Generation: Shùnhuàzhēn 舜化贞

The last ruler of Nánzhào, Shùnhuàzhēn 舜化贞, ruled 897–902 CE, is here written as Shùnhuàzhēn 舜化真.

舜化真之立,以唐昭宗乾宁四年。	Shùnhuàzhēn was enthroned in the 4th year of Táng emperor	
	Zhāozōng's Qiánníng reign.	
改元中兴。	He began the Zhōngxīng reign.	
上书于唐, 唐欲报以诏, 王建言小	He sent a letter to the Táng, the Táng desired to reciprocate by is-	
夷不足辱诏书,臣在西南,彼何敢	suing an edict, Wáng Jiàn opined that a lowly Yí was not worthy of	滇载记 305
犯塞,从之。	an edict, he was a servant in the south-west, how could he dare to	
	attack the borders, this was agreed.	
立四年,其臣郑买嗣夺之,而灭其	He had ruled for four years, when his official Zhèng Mǎisì deposed	
国,追谥孝哀。	him and destroyed his state, he was given the posthumous name	
	Xiàoāi.	滇载记 310

### Then comes a brief summary of the dynasty.

蒙氏自细奴罗至舜化真十有三世,	The Méng clan: from Xìnúluō to Shùnhuàzhēn there were thirteen
立三百十年,而为郑氏。	generations, in power for three hundred and ten years, then came
	the Zhèng clan.

#### Great State of Chánghé 3.5

After the Méng clan 蒙氏 was removed from power, the Zhèng clan 郑氏, i.e. descendants of Zhèng Huí 郑回, took power, proclaiming the Great State of Chánghé 大长和国, which lasted for three generations and twenty-six years. In Chinese records, only two major events are recorded: an attack on Shǔ 蜀 and the request of a princess for marriage from the Southern Hàn 南汉.

郑买嗣本唐郑回之后,世为蒙氏清
平。
唐昭宗光化五年,既灭蒙氏,而自
立,改国号曰大长和,改元曰安国。

Zhèng Mǎisì was a descendant of the Táng's Zhèng Huí, whose family served the Méng clan as prime minister for many generations. In the 5th year of Táng emperor Zhāozōng's Guānghuà reign, he wiped out the Méng clan and took power himself, changing the

*l* 312: 三百十年 ] Liào Déguǎng 廖德广 (2016), p. 77: 二百五十四年. 1316: 唐昭宗光化五年 ] Liào Déguǎng 廖德广 (2016), p. 77: 天复二年

 $r_{301-302}$ : in the 4th year of Táng emperor Zhāozōng's Qiánníng reign ] 897 CE.

*r* 312: for three hundred and ten years ] actually two hundred and fifty-four years.

r 316: In the 5th year of Táng emperor Zhāozōng's Guānghuà reign ] 902 CE – but in fact, this year did not exist as Táng emperor Zhāozōng began the Tiānfù reign in 901 CE, see the correction by Liào Déguǎng 廖德广 (2016), p. 77 to the Chinese text.

		name of the country to Great State of Chánghé, and began the reign
>+++h >	巫 供送簿店 乙見周立	period Ānguó.
滇载记 <u>32</u> 0	死,伪谥德桓,子旻嗣立。	After his death his illegitimate temple name was Déhuán, his son
		Mín succeeded on the throne.
	攻蜀黎州。王建发兵大破之,俘斩数	He attacked Shù's Lízhōu. Wáng Jiàn sent out troops to defeat
	万级,溺死数万人。	them, capturing several ten thousand prisoners of war, several ten
		thousands were injured or killed.
滇载记 <u>325</u>	求婚于南汉,汉主以会城公主妻之。	He asked the Southern Hàn for marriage, the Hàn ruler gave him
		princess Huìchéng.
	改元五,曰始元、曰天瑞景星、曰安	He changed the reign name five times, calling it Shǐyuán, Tiānruì
	和、曰贞佑、曰初历。	Jǐngxīng, Ānhé, Zhēnyòu, and Chūlì.
	死, 伪谥肃文, 子隆亶嗣立, 改元天	He died and his illegitimate temple name was Sùwén, his son
滇载记 330	应。	Lóngdǎn succeeded on the throne, he changed the reign to
		Tiānyìng.
	未几,为东川节度使杨于真所杀。	Not long after, he was killed by the military commissioner of
		Dōngchuān Yáng Yúzhēn.
	郑氏三传,历年二十有六,而为赵	The Zhèng clan clan lasted for three generations over twenty-six
滇载记 335	氏。	years. It was followed by the Zhào clan.

After three generations, the new dynasty came to an end.

郑氏三传,历年二十有六,而为赵	The Zhèng clan clan lasted for three generations over twenty-six
氏。	years, and were followed by the Zhào clan.

# 3.6 Great State of Tiānxīng

The Zhèng clan was followed by Zhào Shànzhèng 赵善政, but the strong man behind all this was Yáng Gānzhēn 杨干贞, here written as Yáng Gānzhēn 杨干真, who was to install himself as ruler not even a year later.

	赵氏名善政,为封氏清平。	He was from the Zhào clan, his name was Shànzhèng, his clan served as prime minister.
滇载记 340	杨干真既杀灭郑氏,遂拔善政而立	Yáng Gānzhēn then killed and wiped out the Zhèng clan, and pro-
	之。	moted Shànzhèng to rule in his stead.
	后唐明宗之天成三年也。	That was in the 3rd year of Later Táng emperor Míngzöng's
		Tiānchéng reign.
	改国号曰大天兴。	He changed the name of the state to Great State of Tiānxīng.
滇载记 345	立仅十月,干真又夺之,而为杨氏。	He ruled only for ten months, Gānzhēn then deposed him and in-
		stalled the Yáng clan.

l 332: 东川] should be Jiànchuān 剑川, see Liào Déguǎng 廖德广 (2016), p. 77.

 $r_{333}$ : Dōngchuān ] should be Jiànchuān 剑川, see Liào Déguǎng 廖德广 (2016), p. 77.  $r_{342-343}$ : in the 3rd year of Later Táng emperor Míngzōng's Tiānchéng reign ] 928 CE.

# 3.7 Great State of Yìníng

Yáng Gānzhēn 杨干贞, ruled 929-937 CE, was after two years deposed by Duàn Sīpíng 段思平.

杨氏名干真,既夺赵氏而有蒙国,	He was from the Yáng clan, his name was Gānzhēn, he deposed the	
改国号曰大义宁,改元曰尊圣。	Zhào clan and their Great State of Méng, he changed the name of	
	the state to Great State of Yìníng and began the Zūnshèng reign.	
贪虐无道,中外咸怨。	He was avaricious and cruel without <i>dào</i> , everyone grew discon-	滇载记 350
	tent.	
通海节度使段思平,兴师问罪,干	The Tōnghǎi military commissioner Duàn Sīpíng sent a punitive	
真不能御,走死。	expedition, Gānzhēn was unable to resist and was killed on the	
	run.	
杨氏立仅二年,而段氏兴焉。	The Yáng clan ruled only for <b>two years</b> , then the Duàn clan rose.	滇载记 355

# 3.8 The Dàlĭ Kingdom

The Dàlǐ kingdom 大理国 was established in 937 CE by a descendant of Duàn Jiǎnwèi 段俭魏, who had risen to prime minister 清平官 under Géluōfèng 阁罗凤, see page 13.

The passage begins with the claim that the Duàn clan 段氏 hailed from Wǔwēi 武威, i.e. a region in Gānsù 甘肃, a claim first raised in the '*Collected Stories from the Annals of Ancient Diān*'《纪古 滇说原集》. However, the Dàlǐ scholar Zhāng Xílù 张锡禄 contests this vigorously, stating that the Duàn clan 段氏 had long been a powerful family in the region and that the term *wǔwēi* 武威 here represents a honorific title given to the family.<sup>(16)</sup>

段氏之先,武威郡人。	The ancestor of the Duàn clan was a man from Wǔwēi
	commandery.
有名俭魏者, 佐蒙氏有功, 赐名忠	His name was Jiǎnwèi, he made merit assiting the Méng clan and
国,擢清平宫。	was given the name Zhōngguó and promoted to prime minister.

# The 1st Generation: Duàn Sīpíng 段思平

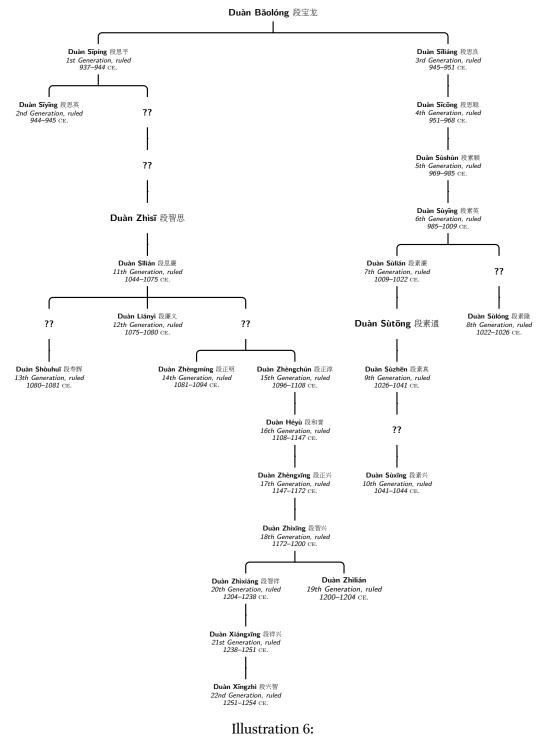
Duàn Sīpíng 段思平, ruled 937-944 CE.

六传而生思平,思平生有异兆。	After six generations Sīpíng was born, Sīpíng was born with lucky	滇载记 36o
杨干真忌之,使人索捕。思平逃匿,	omens. Yáng Gānzhēn envied him, and employed men to search and ar-	

*l* 355: 二年] should be 八年, see Liào Déguǎng 廖德广 (2016), p. 77.

 $r_{355}$ : two years ] eight years.

<sup>(16)</sup> Zhāng Xílù 张锡禄 (2015), pp. 35-40. He most importantly points to a page in the 'Illustrated Annals of Yúnnán' 云南 图经志书 where Jiǎ Fú 叚福, i.e. prince Duàn Fú 段信苴福, is associated with the title Wǔwēi Gōng 武威公 (see 第七卷, 7页b), see https://zh.wikisource.org/wiki/Page:ZHSY100065 景泰雲南圖經志書明鄭願陳文纂修明景泰刻本.pdf/249 (accessed 15th July 2024))



The Duàn clan family tree

得奇戟于品甸波大村,又得神骥于 叶镜湖[在云南县正南大波铺是也]。 饥摘野桃,削之,核肤有文曰:「青 昔。」思平折之曰:「青乃十二月,昔 乃二十一日。今杨氏政乱,吾当以是 日举义乎」

遂借兵东方,黑爨、松爨三十七部皆 助之。众至河尾。

是夕,思平梦人斩其首,又梦玉瓶 耳缺,又梦镜破,惧不敢进兵,其军 师董迦罗曰:「三梦皆吉兆也。公为 大夫,夫去首,为天,天子兆也。玉 瓶去耳为王,王者兆也。镜中有影, 如人有敌,镜破则无影,无影则无 敌矣。三梦皆吉兆也。」

思平乃决明旦引兵欲渡,莫知所从, 见江尾一妇被璎而浣者,指曰:「人 从我江尾,马从三沙矣。尔国名大 理。」从之得济。

既逐杨氏而有蒙国,遂改国号曰大 理,改元曰文德。时后晋天福二年 也。 死,伪谥太祖。 gical halberd in Pǐndiàn's Bōdà village, and also obtained a magic steed at Yèjìng lake [today Yúnnán county straight south at Dà Bōpū]. 滇载记 365 Starving, he plucked a wild peach, peeled it and on the outside of the stone were the characters 'qīng xī'. Sīpíng deciphered it and said: 'qīng means the 12th month, xī means 21st day. Now the Yáng clan is in turmoil, I must start a revolt on that day.' So he borrowed troops from the east regions, the black Cuàn, the 滇载记 370 Song Cuan and the thirty-seven tribes all supported him. The troops arrived at the tail of the river. That night, Sīpíng dreamt of a man with his head cut off, he also dreamt of a jade bottle with an ear missing, he also dreamt of a broken mirror, so he feared to advance his troops, his military 滇载记 375 advisor Dǒng Jiāluō said: 'The three dreams are all good omens: The male represents a man, a man without his head represents heaven, meaning a omen from heaven. A jade bottle without an ear means king, a good omen for the king. In the mirror is a reflection, if there is a man, there is an enemy, a broken mirror has 滇载记 38o no reflection, so there is no enemy. The three dreams are all good omens.' Sīpíng then made a decision to lead his troops the next morning to attempt to cross the river, but did not known where. At the mouth

rest him. Sīpíng escaped and went into hiding, and obtained a ma-

of the river he saw a woman covering a jade stone and washing it. She pointed with her finger and said: 'The infantry follows me to Jiāngwěi, the cavalry follows to Sānshāyĭ. Your state will be called Dàlǐ.' He followed this and had great success.

Then he chased Yáng clan and gained the state of Méng, he changed the state's name calling it Dàlǐ, and began the Wéndé reign. That was **during the 2nd year of the Later Jìn Tiānfú reign**. He passed away and was given the illegitimate posthumous title Tàizǔ.

#### The 2nd Generation: Duàn Sīyīng 段思英

Duàn Sīyīng 段思英 ruled 944-945 CE.

传子思英,立未几,死,伪谥文经武 | He passed on to his son Sīyīng. He died not long after being en-

滇载记 385

滇载记 390

 $r_{372}$ : at the tail of the river ] Lake Ěrhǎi 洱海 was seen as a river having a head and a tail at Lóngwěi pass 龙尾关.

*r* 377–378: The male represents a man, a man without his head represents heaven, meaning a omen from heaven. ] This is a play on the Chinese characters here: the character for man  $f\bar{u} \neq$  without the top leaves  $ti\bar{a}n \neq$ .

*r* 378–379: A jade bottle without an ear means king, a good omen for the king. ] The character  $y\dot{u} \equiv$  without the last stroke leaves *wáng*  $\equiv$ , the character for king.

r 391: during the 2nd year of the Later Jìn Tiānfú reign ]  $\,$  937 CE.

四代糖管信直段患至不够。 一代糖管信直段患至不够。 一代糖管信直段患者。 二代糖管信直段患者。 二代糖管信直段患者。 二代糖管信直段患者。 一、有多数。 一、一、一、一、一、一、一、一、一、一、一、一、一、一、一、一、一、一、一、	金沙江以车叠病遗离/理典 条 開 是 一 一 一 一 一 一 一 一 一 一 一 一 一 一 一 一 一 一	守 所 一 一 一 一 一 一 一 一 一 一 一 一 一 一 一 一	民臣语侯高智引法言主法之元二日明继续继续继承低鉴 民臣语侯高智引法言主法之成元二日明继续继续继承低鉴 素清成以未完理一定改元二日三明继续继续继承低鉴 素清成以未完理一年就 之次元明正规问律于者就 素清成以未完理一年就 之改元司正规则是他提出了年就 是 「我有以来也是是不是四年之改元二日明悉。 考清我以未完理一年就 是 「我有以来也是是不是四年之改元二日明悉。 考清我以未完理一年就 大理面具之主法理四年之改元二日明悉。 考清我以未完理 上一天理面子子成之之之之之之之之之之。 一日上级离台》的新述是他们的"我们的"我们的"。 "我们的人们的"我们的"。 "我们的人们的"。 "我们就是我们的"我们的"。 "我们的人们的"。 "我们的"我们的"。 "我们的", "我们", "我们"
日電子電影型電影性配具是1日起防电速程構築。 一代響管日店具有其他得不識人格覺部三十有七、酸大規構之時時仍強股民子輕世守其土軟藥判 「代響管日店具有氧元中統」在人貌世野基之關釋介含轉完一貫美智二」。 三代轉增信直段是示元中范元件代面外 <sup>41</sup> 或人指聲所等。功識成者離常、勝馬剛會川維昌水昌屬地溝部 三代轉增信直段是示元中范元件代面外「專力」進著兩半体林式之編句之役曾有功授金曲賞單 三代轉增信直段正 三代轉增信直段正 二代轉增信直段正 二代轉增信直段正 二代轉增信直段正 一 一 一 一 一 一 一 一 一 一 一 一 一	金沙口花 臺灣海海大總無及高水轉再戰人敗轉 專秀書 计计联统 不能用于五種標下時自興 智具无靈宗元 年午之政元光成王子 歲元忽 坚烈 轉長 隆之介 三篇 實值 隐瞒 輕 化二丁酸 黑芹属 化乙酰氨化 网络花花 化丁基 化合物 化合物 医外外间 化合物	■ ■ ■ ■ ■ ■ ■ ■ ■ ■ ■ ■ ■ ■ ■ ■ ■ ■ ■	■ 低。電型和学生な元三日明地家領地燃売協会□□伊干素領域細胞地理地 市民に本人工具建築人名美国大学工作工作工作工作工作工作工作工作工作工作工作工作工作工作工作工作工作工作工作

Illustration 7: The《滇载记》(IV)

Source:《大理行记及其它五種》1936

滇载记<sub>395</sub> 囗皇帝。

throned, his illegitimate **posthumous title was Wénjīng Wǔ**  $\square$  **emperor** 

## The 3rd Generation: Duàn Sīliáng 段思良

Duàn Sīliáng 段思良 ruled 945-951 CE.

国人立其叔思良。 思良以后晋开运三年,改元至治。

<sub>滇载记400</sub> 死,伪谥囗囗,传子思聪。

peror

The state's people appointed his uncle Sīliáng. Sīliáng was enthroned **in the 3rd year of the Later Jìn Kāiyùn reign**, and began the Zhìzhì reign. He passed away, was given the posthumous title [**??**], passing on to his son Sīcōng.

### The 4th Generation: Duàn Sīcōng 段思聪

Duàn Sīcōng 段思聪 ruled 951-968 CE.

思聪以后周广顺三年立,改元三, Sīcōng was enthroned in the 3rd year of the later Zhōu

1398: 开运三年 ] Liào Déguǎng 廖德广 (2016): 开运二年.

*r* 395–396: posthumous title was Wénjīng Wǔ □ emperor ] On the '*Illustrated History of Nánzhào*'《南诏图传》is a royal figure labeled Wénwǔ Huángdì 文武皇帝, some think this is Duàn Sīpíng 段思平.

 $r_{39}8:$  in the 3rd year of the Later Jìn Kāiyùn reign ]  $\,$  946 CE, should be 945 CE.

*r* 400: [??]] marked as non-readable characters.

r402–403: in the 3rd year of the later Zhōu Guǎngshùn reign ] 953 се.

曰明德、广德、圣德。	Guǎngshùn reign, he began three reign periods, called Míngdé,	
	Guǎngdé, and Shèngdé.	
死伪谥囗囗,传于素顺[素顺于思聪	He passed away and was given the posthumous title [??], and was	滇载记 405
未知何属也]。	succeeded by <b>Sùshùn</b> [The relationship between Sùshùn and Sīcōng is	
	unknown.].	

# The 5th Generation: Duàn Sùshùn 段素顺

Duàn Sùshùn 段素顺 ruled 969-985 CE.

素顺以宋太祖建隆四年立。	Sùshùn was enthroned in the 4th year of Sòng emperor Tàizǔ's	
	Jiànlóng reign.	
时王全斌既平蜀,欲因兵威取滇以	When Wáng Quánbīn had pacified Shǔ he desired to use force to	滇载记 410
图进于上,太祖鉴唐之祸基于南诏,	take Diān and sent a memorial with a map, the Tàizǔ warned of	
以王斧画大渡河曰:「此外非吾有	the Táng desaster in Nánzhào, and with a jade axe he made a line	
也。」	at the Dàdù River, saying: 'What lies beyond this, does not belong	
	to me.'	
由是,云南三百年不通中国,段氏	Because of this, over three hundred years Yúnnán was not connec-	滇载记 415
得以睨临僰爨以长世焉。	ted with China, the Duàn clan were able to control the Bó and Cuàn	
	for generations.	
素顺十七年,改元明正。	In the 17th year Sùshùn began the Míngzhèng reign.	
死,伪谥应道皇帝,传子素英。	He passed away, his illegitimate posthumous name was emperor	
	Yìngdào, his son Sùyīng succeeded him.	滇载记 <b>42</b> 0

# The 6th Generation: Duàn Sùyīng 段素英

Duàn Sùyīng 段素英 ruled 985-1009 CE.

素英以宋太祖雍熙二年立,改元五,	Sùyīng was enthroned in the 2nd year of Sòng Tàizǔ's Yōngxī	
曰广明、明应、明圣、明德、明治。	reign, he began five reign periods, called Guǎngmíng, Míngyìng,	
	Míngshèng, Míngdé, and Míngzhì.	
死伪谥昭明,传于素廉。	He passed away, his illegitimate posthumous name was Zhāomíng,	
	he was succeeded by Sùlián.	滇载记 <b>425</b>

*l* 403: 圣德] Liào Déguǎng 廖德广 (2016), p. 78: 顺德 *l* 408: 建隆四年] Liào Déguǎng 廖德广 (2016), p. 78: 开宝二年.

*r* 405: [??]] characters unreadable

*r* 410: When Wáng Quánbīn had pacified Shǔ ] General Wáng Quánbīn 王全斌 conquered Later Shǔ 后蜀 in 964 CE. *r* 411: Tàizǔ ] i.e. Sòng emperor Tàizǔ.

*r* 418: In the 17th year ] this must be his 17th year, so 979 CE.

r406: Sùshùn ] yepyc 素顺 is Duàn Sùshùn 段素顺.

r 408–409: in the 4th year of Sòng emperor Tàizǔ's Jiànlóng reign ] 963 CE, but should be 969 CE.

*r* 421–422: in the 2nd year of Sòng Tàizǔ's Yōngxī reign ] 985 CE.

#### The 7th Generation: Duàn Sùlián 段素廉

Duàn Sùlián 段素廉 ruled 1009-1022 CE.

素廉以宋真宗祥符二年立,改元二,	Sùlián was enthroned in the 2nd year of Sòng emperor Zhēn-
曰明启、乾兴。	zōng's Xiángfú reign, he began two reign periods, Míngqĭ and
	Qiánxīng.
死伪谥敬明,传于素隆。	He passed away, his illegitimate posthumous name was Jìngmíng,
	he was succeeded by Sùlóng.

#### The 8th Generation: Duàn Sùlóng 段素隆

Duàn Sùlóng 段素隆 ruled 1022-1026 CE.

素隆以宋天禧二年立,改元曰明通、	Sùlóng was enthroned in the 2nd year of Sòng Tiānxǐ, he began
天圣,避位为僧。	the Míngtōng and Tiānshèng reign, he renounced the throne to be-
	come monk.
死, 伪谥秉义, 传于素贞。	He passed away, his illegitimate posthumous name was Bǐngyì, he
	was succeeded by Sùzhēn.

### The 9th Generation: Duàn Sùzhēn 段素真

Duàn Sùzhēn 段素真 is here written as Sùzhēn 素贞, he ruled 1026–1041 CE.

ī.

素贞以宋仁宗天圣四年立,改元正	Sùzhēn was enthroned in the 4th year of Sòng emperor Rénzōng's
治。	Tiānshèng year, he began the Zhèngzhì reign.
死, 伪谥圣德, 传于素兴。	He passed away, was given the illegitimate posthumous title
	Shèngdé, he was followed by Sùxīng.

# The 10th Generation: Duàn Sùxīng 段素兴

Duàn Sùxīng 段素兴 ruled 1041-1044 CE.

滇载记 440	素兴以宋庆历元年立,改元二,圣	Sùxīng was enthroned <b>in the 1st year of the Sòng's Qìnglì reign</b> , he
	明、天明。	began two reigns, Shèngmíng and Tiānmíng.
	以无道,国人废之,而立思廉。	As he had no <i>dào</i> , the people deposed him and installed Sīlián.

*l* 426–427:改元二,曰明启、乾兴] Liào Déguǎng 廖德广 (2016), p. 78:改元一,曰明启. Qiánxīng 乾兴 was a reign period of Sòng emperor Zhēnzōng.

*r* 431: in the 2nd year of Sòng Tiānxǐ ] 1018 CE.

*r* 436–437: in the 4th year of Sòng emperor Rénzōng's Tiānshèng year ] 1026 CE

*r* 426–427: in the 2nd year of Sòng emperor Zhēnzōng's Xiángfú reign ] 1009 CE.

r 427–428: two reign periods, Míngqǐ and Qiánxīng ] Just one reign period, Qiánxīng was a reign period of Sòng emperor Zhēnzōng.

*r* 440: in the 1st year of the Sòng's Qìnglì reign ] 1041 CE.

# The 11th Generation: Duàn Sīlián 段思廉

#### Duàn Sīlián 段思廉 ruled 1044-1075 CE.

思廉以宋庆历四年立。	Sīlián was enthroned in the 4th year of the Sòng's Qìnglì reign.	
皇佑中,广西侬智高掠广州,败走	The emperor protected China, in Guǎngxī Nóng Zhìgāo plundered	
大理。狄青募死士使大理求之。会智	Guǎngzhōu, he was defeated and fled to Dàlǐ. Díqīng recruited	滇载记 445
高已死于大理,函其首至京师。段氏	brave soldiers to go to Dàlĭ to request him. When they arrived	
至是,始闻名于中国。	Zhìgāo had already passed away in Dàlǐ, they carried his head to	
	the capital. From than on the Duàn clan was famous in China $_\circ$	
思廉立三十一年,改元四,曰保安、	Sīlián ruled for thirty-one years, he began four reign periods, called	
政安、政德。	Bǎoān, Zhèngān, Zhèngdé.	滇载记 450
死,伪谥世宗,传子连义。	He passed away, was given the illegitimate posthumous name	
	Shìzōng, and passed power to his son Liányì.	

## The 12th Generation: Duàn Liányì 段廉义

Duàn Liányì 段廉义 is here written as Liányì 连义, ruled 1075-1080 CE.

连义以宋熙宁八年立,改元二,曰	Liányì was enthroned <b>in the 8th year of the Sòng Xīníng reign</b> , he	
上德、广安。	began two reign periods, called Shàngdé and Guǎngān.	
为其臣杨义贞所杀。杨义贞篡立,自	He was killed by his official Yáng Yìzhēn. Yáng Yìzhēn usurped	滇载记 455
号广安皇帝,凡四年。	power, called himself Guǎngān emperor, ruled for four years.	
段氏臣岳侯高智升,遣子升太,起	The Duàn clan official the Marquis of Yuè Gāo Zhìshēng sent out	
东方兵讨灭之,而立段寿辉[寿辉,	his son Shēngtài to raise troops in the east to attack and destroy	
连义之从子]。	him, and installed Duàn Shòuhuī [Shòuhuī was a nephew of Liányì.]	

### The 13th Generation: Duàn Shòuhuī 段寿辉

Duàn Shòuhuī 段寿辉 ruled 1080-1081 CE.

寿辉立二年,改元曰上明,传于正 | Shòuhuī ruled for two years, he began the Shàngmíng reign, and <sub>滇载记 460</sub> 明。 | passed power to Zhèngmíng.

### The 14th Generation: Duàn Zhèngmíng 段正明

Duàn Zhèngmíng 段正明 ruled 1081-1094 CE.

正明以宋元丰五年立,改元三,曰 Zhèngmíng was enthroned in the 5th year of Sòng Yuánfēng, he

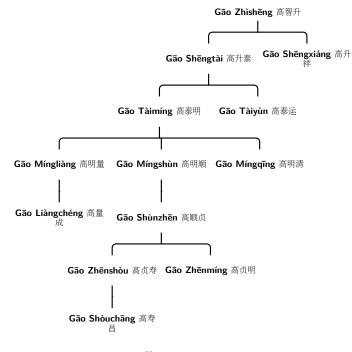
r 443: in the 4th year of the Sòng's Qìnglì reign  $]\,$  1044 CE.

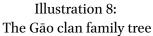
r 444: Nóng Zhìgāo ] Nóng Zhìgāo 依智高 was a tribal leader in Guǎngxī 广西 during the Sòng dynasty, led a rebellion, was defeated in 1054 and fled to the Dàlǐ kingdom, see Anderson (2007) and also Barlow (1987), pp. 254–258. r 453: in the 8th year of the Sòng Xīníng reign ] 1075 CE.

r462: 五年] Liào Déguǎng 廖德广 (2016), p. 79: 四年.

<sup>7402</sup>:  $\Pi + 1$  Liao Deguang ( $\gg \infty$ ) (2010), p. 79:  $\square + 1$ 

r 462: in the 5th year of Sòng Yuánfēng ]  $\,$  1082 CE, but should be 1081 CE.





	保立、建安、天佑。	began three reign periods, called Bǎolì, Jiànān, and Tiānyòu.
	避位为僧。	He abdicated to become a monk.
已 465	时国人皆归心高氏,遂奉高升太为	At that time the people all willingly submitted to the Gāo clan, and
	主,而段氏中绝。	installed Gāo Shēngtài as ruler and the Duàn clan [rule] was inter-
		rupted in the middle.

# Interregnum: Gāo Shēngtài 高升泰

Gāo Shēngtài 高升泰, here written as Gāo Shēngtài 高升太,<sup>(17)</sup> usurped power from the Duàn clan and began a brief interregnum, he ruled 1094–1096 CE.

高升太有功段氏,为国人所立,以	Gāoshēngtài made merit for the Duàn clan and was brought to
宋哲宗之元符二年立。	power by the people, he was enthroned was enthroned <b>in the 2nd</b>
	year of Sòng dynasty emperor Zhézōng's Yuánfú reign,
改国号曰大中国,改元上治。	He changed the name of the state to state of Dàzhōng and began
	the Shàngzhì reign.

*r* 469–470: in the 2nd year of Sòng dynasty emperor Zhézōng's Yuánfú reign ] that would be 1099 CE, but this is wrong, it should be 1094 CE.

<sup>(17)</sup> see illustration 7, middle

滇载

临终,属其子太明曰:「段氏不振,	At the end of his life, he said to his son Tàimíng: 'The Duàn clan	
国人推我,我不得已从之。今其子已	lacks vitality, the people chose me, I had no choice but to obey	
长,可还其故物。尔后人勿效尤也。」	them. Today, their son has already grown up, it is right to return to	滇载记 475
	the old arrangement, the later generations must not follow a bad	
	example.'	
太明遵其遗言,求段氏馀子正淳立	Tàimíng followed his death wish, and asked that the Duàn clan's	
之,而段氏复兴,号曰后理国。	son [by a concubine] Zhèngchún ascend the throne, and the Duàn	
	clan rose again, and changed the name of the state to Later King-	滇载记 48o
	dom of Dàlĭ.	
高氏世相之,赏罚政令皆由之,国	The ${\rm G}\bar{\rm a}{\rm o}$ clan served over generations as prime ministers, rewarded	
人称为高国主。	and punished, reigned and gave orders according to their wishes,	
	the people called the Gāo rulers of the state.	
波斯、昆仑诸国,来贡大理者,皆先	When Bōsī and the state of Kūnlún came to bring tribute to Dàlǐ,	滇载记 485
谒相国焉。	they all first called on the prime ministers.	

## The 15th Generation: Duàn Zhèngchún 段正淳

Duàn Zhèngchún 段正淳 ruled 1096–1108 CE.

Zhèngchún restored the state and began the Tiānshòu reign.	
He appointed Gāo Tàimíng as prime minister and Gāo Tàilián as	
zhàzhǔ.	
Gāo Tàilián was sent to the Sòng court, asking for scriptures, and	滇载记 490
obtained [the works of] sixty-nine scholars.	
He ruled for thirteen years, he also changed the reign to Kāimíng	
and Wénān.	
He abdicated to become a monk.	
He passed power to his son Zhèngyán.	滇载记 495
He passed away and was given the illegitimate posthumous name	
Zhōngzōng.	
	<ul> <li>He appointed Gāo Tàimíng as prime minister and Gāo Tàilián as <i>zhàzhǔ</i>.</li> <li>Gāo Tàilián was sent to the Sòng court, asking for scriptures, and obtained [the works of] sixty-nine scholars.</li> <li>He ruled for thirteen years, he also changed the reign to Kāimíng and Wénān.</li> <li>He abdicated to become a monk.</li> <li>He passed power to his son Zhèngyán.</li> <li>He passed away and was given the illegitimate posthumous name</li> </ul>

# The 16th Generation: Duàn Zhèngyán 段正严

Duàn Zhèngyán 段正严 ruled 1108–1147 CE.

正严以宋徽宗大观二年。	Zhèngyán was enthroned in the 2nd year of Sòng emperor	
	Huīzōng's Dàguān reign.	
立四十年,改元四,曰日新、永嘉、	He ruled for forty years, he also changed the reign four times to	滇载记 500
保天、广运。	Rìxīn, Yǒngjiā, Bǎotiān, and Guǎngyùn.	

 $r_{473}$ : Tàimíng ] Gāo Tàimíng 高泰明 is written as Gāo Tàimíng 高太明 here, their naming follows the patronymic linkage scheme, see Lo (1945).

*r* 491: [the works of] sixty-nine scholars ] unclear

 $r_{498-499}$ : in the 2nd year of Sòng emperor Huīzōng's Dàguān reign ] 1108 CE.

避位为僧。	He abdicated to become a monk.
传子正兴。	He passed power to his son Zhèngxīng.
死,伪谥宪宗。	He passed away and was given the illegitimate posthumous name
	Xiànzōng.

# The 17th Generation: Duàn Zhèngxīng 段正兴

Duàn Zhèngxīng 段正兴 ruled 1147-1172 CE.

正兴以宋高宗绍兴十七年立,改元	Zhèngxīng was enthroned in the 17th year of Sòng emperor
四:永贞、太宝、龙兴、盛明。	Gāozōng's Shàoxīng reign, he began four reign periods: Yǒngzhēn,
	Tàibǎo, Lóngxīng, Shèngmíng.
避位为僧。	He abdicated to become a monk.
传子智兴。	He passed on to his son Zhìxīng.
死,伪谥景宗。	He passed away and was given the illegitimate posthumous name
	Jĭngzōng.

### The 18th Generation: Duàn Zhìxīng 段智兴

Duàn Zhìxīng 段智兴 ruled 1172-1200 CE.

智兴以宋孝宗乾道八年立,改元五,	Zhìxīng was enthroned in the 8th year of Southern Sòng emperor
曰利贞、盛德、嘉会、元亨、安定。	Xiàozōng's Qiándào reign, he began five reign periods, called
	Lìzhēn, Shèngdé, Jiāhuì, Yuánhēng, and Āndìng.
死,伪谥宣宗。	He passed away and was given the illegitimate posthumous name
	Xuānzōng.
传子智连。	He passed on to his son Zhìlián.

# The 19th Generation: Duàn Zhìlián 段智廉

Duàn Zhìlián 段智廉, here written as Duàn Zhìlián 段智连, ruled 1200–1204 CE.

	智连以宋宁宗庆元六年立,改元凤	Zhìlián was enthroned in the 6th year of Southern Sòng emperor
滇载记 <u>5</u> 20	历。	Níngzōng's Qìngyuán reign, he began the Fènglì reign.
	死,伪谥享天。	He passed away and was given the illegitimate posthumous name
		Xiǎngtiān.
	传弟智祥。	He passed on to his younger brother Zhìxiáng.

1506-507:改元四:永贞、太宝、龙兴、盛明] Liào Déguǎng 廖德广 (2016), p. 80 adds a reign period jiàndé 建德.

滇载记 510

 $r_{\rm 506-507:}\,$  in the 17th year of Sòng emperor Gāozōng's Shàoxīng reign  $]\,$  1147 CE.

*r* 513–514: in the 8th year of Southern Sòng emperor Xiàozōng's Qiándào reign ] 1173 CE.

r 519–520: in the 6th year of Southern Sòng emperor Níngzōng's Qìngyuán reign ]  $\,$  1200 ce.

# The 20th Generation: Duàn Zhìxiáng 段智祥

Duàn Zhìxiáng 段智祥 ruled 1204-1238 CE.

智祥以宋宁宗开僖元年立,改元天	Zhìxiáng was enthroned in the 1st year of Southern Sòng emperor	
开、仁寿。 Níngzōng's Kāixī reign, he began the Tiānkāi and Rénshòu rei		滇载记 525
死, 伪谥神宗。	He passed away and was given the illegitimate posthumous name	
	Shénzōng.	
传子祥兴。	He passed on to his son Xiángxīng.	

# The 21st Generation: Duàn Xiángxīng 段祥兴

Duàn Xiángxīng 段祥兴 ruled 1238-1251 CE.

祥兴以宋理宗嘉熙三年立,改元道	Xiángxīng was enthroned in the 3rd year of Sòng emperor	
隆。	Lǐzōng's Jiāxī reign, and began the Dàolóng reign.	滇载记 530
甲辰,元兵攻之,高禾逆战,败死。	[死。] In the <i>jiǎchén</i> year, the Yuán troops attacked him, Gāo Hé con-	
宋遣使祭之。	fronted them in battle, suffered a defeat and died. The Sòng sent	
	an envoy for condolences.	
祥兴死,伪谥孝义。	Xiángxīng passed away and was given the illegitimate posthumous	
	name Xiàoyì.	滇载记 535
传子兴智。	He passed on to his son Xīngzhì.	

# The 22nd Generation: Duàn Xīngzhì 段兴智

# Duàn Xīngzhì 段兴智 ruled 1251-1254 CE.

兴智以元宪宗元年立,改元天定。	Xīngzhì was enthroned in the 1st year of Möngke Khan, he	
	changed the reign to Tiāndìng.	
壬子岁,元忽必烈将兵击之,分三	In the rénzi year, Yuán Kublai Khan led troops to attrack him,	
道进,自临洮经行山谷二千馀里,	three armies advanced from Líntáo, crossing mountains and val-	滇载记 540
浮金沙江以革囊济,进薄大理。	leys for more than two thousand $l\check{\iota}$ , floated across the Jīnshā River	
	using leather bags, and advanced on Dàlǐ.	
兴智及高太祥拒战,大败。	Xīngzhì and <b>Gāo Tàixiáng</b> resisted them in battle, they suffered a	
	great defeat.	
祥、兴奔善阐。太祥就擒,不屈,斩	Xiáng and Xīngzhì fled to Shànchǎn. Tàixiáng was taken prisoner,	滇载记 545

*l* 529: 嘉熙三年立 ] Liào Déguǎng 廖德广 (2016): 嘉熙二年立

r 524–525: in the 1st year of Southern Sòng emperor Níngzōng's Kāixī reign ]  $\,$  1205 CE.

*r* 529–530: in the 3rd year of Sòng emperor Lǐzōng's Jiāxī reign ] 1239 CE, but should be 1238 CE.

 $r_{531}$ : In the *jiǎchén* year ] 1244 CE.

 $r_{537}$ : in the 1st year of Möngke Khan ] 1251 CE.

*r* 539: In the *rénzi* year ] 1252 CE.

*r* 540: from Líntáo ] i.e. from a region in Gānsù 甘肃.

r543: Gāo Tàixiáng ] Gāo Tàixiáng 高泰祥 here written as Gāo Tàixiáng 高太祥.

	于五华楼下。时白日当午,忽云起雷	he was unrepentant and dismembered below Wǔhuá tower. Dur-
震,世祖异之,曰:「忠臣也!」 ing the day at noon, suddenly clouds gathered and		ing the day at noon, suddenly clouds gathered and there was a
		thunderstorm, Shìzǔ considered this strange and said 'A loyal of-
		ficial!'
滇载记 55o	遂虏兴智,灭其国。	They succeeded to capture Xīngzhì and destroyed his country.

Then comes the usual summary of the Duàn clan 段氏 ruling Dàlǐ, see also illustration 6.

段氏自思平至兴智,二十二主,历The Duàn clan from Sīpíng to Xīngzhì were twenty-two rulers,三百五十年。within three hundred fifty years.

# 3.9 The Duàn Clan Route Commanders

After the defeat of the Dàlǐ kingdom 大理国, the Duàn clan 段氏 proved indispensible for governing the region and their leading men were appointed as route commanders *zǒngguǎn* 总管 and thus continued de-facto ruling Yúnnán for another eleven generations.

The text here presents almost no information for most, only towards the end seems information more readily available. One of the most comprehensive coverages of Mongol rule in Yúnnán can be found in Robinson (2020), pp. 224–229. Zhāng Xílù 张锡禄 (2015) has a very comprehensive analysis of the Zǒngguǎn 总管 period.<sup>(18)</sup>

	元既灭段氏而有其地,得五城、八	The Yuán thus eliminated the Duàn clan and appropriated their
	府、蛮郡三十有七,设大理都元帅	lands, they took five walled towns, eight prefectures, the thirty-
滇载记 555	府,仍录段氏子姓世守其土。	seven <i>Mán</i> districts, established the Dàlĭ area command military
		command, and employed the descendants of the Duàn clan to
		guard their lands in succession.
	赦兴智封为摩诃罗嵯,管领八方。	They pardoned Xīngzhì and appointed him mahārāja to adminis-
		ter all regions.
滇载记 56o	兴智死,元季乱,中原多故,段氏复	Xīngzhì passed away, the Yuán were in turmoil for a period, in the
	据之。于是,有十一总管出焉。	central plains was much strive, so the Duàn clan seized it again.
		From them came eleven route commanders.

*l* 551-552: 历三百五十年] Liào Déguǎng 廖德广 (2016), p. 80: 历三百十五年

*r* 552: three hundred fifty years ] three hundred and fifteen years. *r* 558: *mahārāja* ] Móhēluōcuó 摩诃罗嵯 is a Chinese transliteration of *mahārāja*.

 $<sup>^{(18)}</sup>$  There is also an earlier edition of the work, Zhāng Xílù 张锡禄 (2006), I am not aware of any material differences between the two editions.

# The 1st Generation: Duàn Shí 段实

The relation of the first route commander 总管, Duàn Shí 段实, with his predecessor Duàn Xīngzhì 段兴智 is not clear, either Duàn Xīngzhì was the father or an elder brother.<sup>(19)</sup>

All the Dàlĭ route commander carry the prefix  $xinj\bar{u}$  信  $\Xi$ , a honorific given to at least some of the Dàlĭ rulers at the time, meaning 'prince'.<sup>(20)</sup>

一代总管曰信苴段实。	The 1st generation route commander was called Prince Duàn Shí.	
元中统二年入觐,世祖嘉之,赐玺	In the 2nd year of the Yuán Zhōngtǒng era he had an audience	
书,令总管大理、善阐、会川、建昌、	with the emperor, Kublai Khan praised him, granted him official	滇载记 565
永昌、腾越诸郡,以功累授行省参政。	seals, he was ordered to administer Dàlĭ, Shànchǎn, Huìchuān,	
	Jiànchāng, Yǒngchāng, and Téngyuè commandery, for his record	
	of merit he was made provincial assistant grand councilor of the	
	Yuán.	
以攻石城、[今曲靖]及仁德府[今寻	He attacked Shíchéng [today's Qūjìng] and Réndé prefecture [today's	滇载记 570
甸]。	Xúndiàn].	
功,锡虎符为总管。	He was successfull and was awarded a tiger tally and made route	
	commander.	

# The 2nd Generation: Duàn Zhōng 段忠

Again, the relation with his predecessor is not clear, either father and son or brothers.<sup>(21)</sup>

二代总管信苴段忠。	The 2nd generation route commander was called Prince Duàn	
	Zhōng.	滇载记 575
至元中,随元师伐西林,破会川,通	In the Zhìyuán era he followed the marshall to attack Liǎnglín,	
善阐,平休林,武定、缅甸之役皆有	he defeated Huìchuān, connected a road to Shànchǎn, he pacified	
功,授金齿宣慰,兼掌军民万户府。	Xiūlín, the campaigns agains Wǔdìng and Miǎndiàn were both suc-	
	cessful, he was made Jīnchĭ pacification commissioner while also	
	administering ten thousand military and civil households.	滇载记 58o

# The 3rd Generation: Duàn Qìng 段庆

三代总管信苴段庆。

The 3rd generation route commander was called Prince Duàn Qìng.

1576: 西林] should be Liǎnglín 两林, see Liào Déguǎng 廖德广 (2016), p. 80.

r 564: In the 2nd year of the Yuán Zhōngtǒng era ] 1261 CE. r 576: In the Zhìyuán ] 1264–1294 CE.

<sup>(19)</sup> see Zhāng Xílù 张锡禄 (2015), p. 43 for sources.

<sup>(20)</sup> see Zhāng Xílù 张锡禄 (2015), p. 43.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>(21)</sup> see Zhāng Xílù 张锡禄 (2015), p. 52 for sources.

	十 為 皇 目.希 詩 疑 吾.章 金 既 栗 丞.十 一山衛 風梅 二 開 號 號 任 馬 企 定,而 炭 代 代 維主 海 有 日 得 多 正 山 境 兄 非 民 智 時 政 基 如 人 和 是 我 我 我 我 我 我 我 我 我 我 我 我 我 我 我 我 我 我	土 非理解物体损 烧 馬 身 環 骨 日 東 境 自 南 各 日 面 進 第 9 月 2 東 境 南 各 日 面 進 第 9 月 2 東 第 九 嚴 爾 休 欄 紅 這 洋 第 9 月 2 東 第 九 嚴 爾 秋 欄 紙 這 洋 第 月 和 子 教 整 光 電 差 載 麗 光 這 等 月 月 金 散 叙 散 化 建 考 时 天 志 雪 考 月 书	会口的力量之后、维尔能力、不不不不不不不不不不不不不不不不不不不不不不不不不不不不不不不不不不不不
	十一代體管信宜發現法式十四年後年、2018年2月15日、111 111 111 111日、111日、111日、111日、111日	自是硬短度大等于开有和空王和重率之动建塑不肯解决其是人高氏的解决有金属的化的其间目录接触。 常要若希林眼众心不已能是成为是一个有效是一个有效是一个有限的发展。 这些学者和眼镜之后在有有心的眼睛在是主要这些人的眼睛和是一个情况。 我们的学者我能是自然的情况。 我们的学者我能是有金属的是一个有的我们会有一些的情况。 我们的学者我能是自然的情况。 我们的学者我能是自然的情况。 我们的学者我能是自然的情况。 我们的学者我能是有金属的是一个有的我们是一些不能的我们是要有这个情况。 我们的学者我能是自然的情况。 我们的学者我能是有金属的是一个有的我们会有一些的情况。 我们的学者我们的是一些不是一个我们是要是一个我们是要是一个我们是要是一个我们是要是一个我们是要是一个我们是要是一个我们是要是一个我们是要是一个我们是一些不是一个我们是要是一个我们是要是一个我们是要是一个我们是要是一个我们是要是一个我们是一个我们是要是一个我们的学校的。 一个我们的学校们是一个我们是要是我们的我们是要是我们的我们的我们是要是我们的我们的我们的我们是要是我们的我们的我们的我们的我们的我们的我们的我们的我们的我们的我们的我们的我们的我	10 五代標常信直段。 五代書。 五代書。 五代書。 五代書。 五代書。 五代書。 五代書。 五代書
		Illustration 9: The《滇载记》(V)	
	Source:《大理行记及其它五種》1936		
	元封为宣武将军,妻以公主,入朝 归,授云南省参政。	The Yuán made him Xuānwǔ general, he was given a princess as wife, made a tribute mission to submit, and was made Yúnnán province assistant grand councilor.	
	The 4th Generation: Duàn Zhèng 段正		
	四代总管信苴段正。 The 4th generation route commander was called Prince Duàn Zhèng.		
	The 5th Generation: Duàn Lóng 段隆		
	五代总管信苴段隆。 The 5th generation route commander was called Prince Lóng.		nander was called Prince Duàn
	The 6th Generation: Duàn Jùn 段俊		
滇载记 590	590 六代总管信苴段俊。 The 6th generation route commander was called Prince Duàn		nder was called Prince Duàn Jùn.
	The 7th Generation: Duàn Yì 段义		
	七代总管信苴段义。	The 7th generation route comma	nder was called Prince Duàn Yì.
	The 8th Generation: Duàn Guāng 段光		
	八代总管信苴段光。	The 8th generation route comm	nander was called Prince Duàn

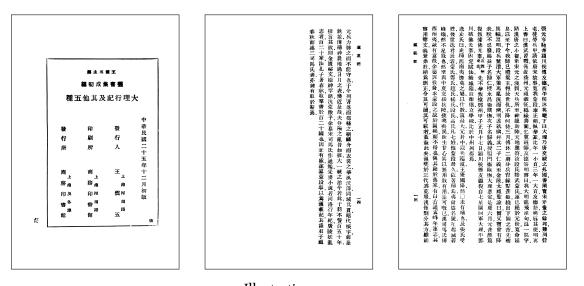


Illustration 10: The 《滇载记》 (VI)

Source:《大理行记及其它五種》1936

<ul> <li>时元大德中,中原板荡梁王,以元</li> <li>宗室镇善阐,与段氏分域,构隙。</li> <li>平ince Liáng was appointed as Yuán clansman to guard Shànchǎn, 唐 divided the territory with the Duàn clan, breaking it up.</li> <li>The and year of Zhìdà, Prince Liáng defeated the troops of Guāng.</li> <li>光将高蓬守罗那关,梁王密招之, 不从,乃赂蓬庖人刺蓬,以其首献 梁王,王并庖人戮之。</li> <li>室治元年,玉案山产小赤犬,群吠 遍野。占云,天狗坠地为赤犬,其下 有大军覆境。又时兩铁,民舍、山石 皆穿,人物值之多毙。谣俗号曰铁雨。</li> <li>During the time of Yuán Dàdé, the central plains were in upheaval, Prince Liáng was appointed as Yuán clansman to guard Shànchǎn, igātil 595</li> <li>During the time of Yuán Dàdé, the central plains were in upheaval, Prince Liáng was appointed as Yuán clansman to guard Shànchǎn, igātil 595</li> <li>During the time of Yuán Dàdé, the central plains were in upheaval, Prince Liáng was appointed as Yuán clansman to guard Shànchǎn, igātil 595</li> <li>Bada the territory with the Duàn clan, breaking it up.</li> <li>In the 2nd year of Zhìdà, Prince Liáng defeated the troops of Guāng.</li> <li>Guāng gave Gãopéng Luōnà gate to defend, Prince Liáng secretly recruited him, he did not obey, so he bribed Péng's cook to stab Péng, to present his head to Prince Liáng, the king then executed the cook.</li> <li>In the 1st year of Zhìzhì, in Yùàn mountain a small red dog was born, it barked all over the place. They consulted an oracle: When a heavenly dog falls from the sky as a red dog, then a mighty army would attack the borders. At the time it also rained iron, piercing houses and mountains, people and their crops all dropped dead. The people called it the iron rain.</li> </ul>		Guang.	
至大二年,梁王大破光兵。he divided the territory with the Duàn clan, breaking it up.光将高蓬守罗那关,梁王密招之, 不从,乃赂蓬庖人刺蓬,以其首献 梁王,王并庖人戮之。In the and year of Zhìdà, Prince Liáng defeated the troops of Guāng.空流雨g.Guāng gave Gãopéng Luōnà gate to defend, Prince Liáng secretly recruited him, he did not obey, so he bribed Péng's cook to stab Péng, to present his head to Prince Liáng, the king then executed the cook.至治元年,玉案山产小赤犬,群吠 高野。占云,天狗坠地为赤犬,其下 有大军覆境。又时雨铁,民舍、山石 皆穷,人物值之多毙。谣俗号曰铁雨。In the ist year of Zhìzhì, in Yùàn mountain a small red dog was born, it barked all over the place. They consulted an oracle: When a heavenly dog falls from the sky as a red dog, then a mighty arm would attack the borders. At the time it also rained iron, piercing houses and mountains, people and their crops all dropped dead.	时元大德中,中原板荡梁王,以元	During the time of Yuán Dàdé, the central plains were in upheaval,	
至大二年,梁王大破光兵。In the 2nd year of Zhìdà, Prince Liáng defeated the troops of Guāng.光将高蓬守罗那关,梁王密招之, 不从,乃赂蓬庖人刺蓬,以其首献 梁王,王并庖人戮之。Guāng gave Gāopéng Luōnà gate to defend, Prince Liáng secretly recruited him, he did not obey, so he bribed Péng's cook to stab Péng, to present his head to Prince Liáng, the king then executed the cook. <sub>漢载记 600</sub> 至治元年,玉案山产小赤犬,群吠 海野。占云,天狗坠地为赤犬,其下 有大军覆境。又时雨铁,民舍、山石 皆穿,人物值之多毙。谣俗号曰铁雨。In the 1st year of Zhìzhì, in Yùàn mountain a small red dog was born, it barked all over the place. They consulted an oracle: When a heavenly dog falls from the sky as a red dog, then a mighty army would attack the borders. At the time it also rained iron, piercing houses and mountains, people and their crops all dropped dead. <sub>漢載记 605</sub>	宗室镇善阐,与段氏分域,构隙。	Prince Liáng was appointed as Yuán clansman to guard Shànchǎn,	滇载记 595
光将高蓬守罗那关,梁王密招之, 不从,乃赂蓬庖人刺蓬,以其首献 梁王,王并庖人戮之。Guāng.Guāng, Guāng gave Gāopéng Luōnà gate to defend, Prince Liáng secretly recruited him, he did not obey, so he bribed Péng's cook to stab Péng, to present his head to Prince Liáng, the king then executed the cook.講載记 600至治元年,玉案山产小赤犬,群吠 遍野。占云,天狗坠地为赤犬,其下 有大军覆境。又时雨铁,民舍、山石 皆穿,人物值之多毙。谣俗号曰铁雨。In the 1st year of Zhìzhì, in Yùàn mountain a small red dog was born, it barked all over the place. They consulted an oracle: When a heavenly dog falls from the sky as a red dog, then a mighty army would attack the borders. At the time it also rained iron, piercing houses and mountains, people and their crops all dropped dead.讓載记 605		he divided the territory with the Duàn clan, breaking it up.	
<ul> <li>光将高蓬守罗那关,梁王密招之, 不从,乃赂蓬庖人刺蓬,以其首献 梁王,王并庖人戮之。</li> <li>至治元年,玉案山产小赤犬,群吠 遍野。占云,天狗坠地为赤犬,其下 有大军覆境。又时雨铁,民舍、山石 皆穿,人物值之多毙。谣俗号曰铁雨。</li> <li>Guāng gave Gāopéng Luōnà gate to defend, Prince Liáng secretly recruited him, he did not obey, so he bribed Péng's cook to stab Péng, to present his head to Prince Liáng, the king then executed the cook.</li> <li>In the 1st year of Zhìzhì, in Yùàn mountain a small red dog was born, it barked all over the place. They consulted an oracle: When a heavenly dog falls from the sky as a red dog, then a mighty army would attack the borders. At the time it also rained iron, piercing houses and mountains, people and their crops all dropped dead.</li> </ul>	至大二年,梁王大破光兵。	In the 2nd year of Zhìdà, Prince Liáng defeated the troops of	
<ul> <li>不从,乃赂蓬庖人刺蓬,以其首献 梁王,王并庖人戮之。</li> <li>车在: 和克人教之。</li> <li>车定ruited him, he did not obey, so he bribed Péng's cook to stab Péng, to present his head to Prince Liáng, the king then executed the cook.</li> <li>五方元年,玉案山产小赤犬,群吠 遍野。占云,天狗坠地为赤犬,其下 有大军覆境。又时雨铁,民舍、山石 皆穿,人物值之多毙。谣俗号曰铁雨。</li> <li>正式, 大物值之多毙。谣俗号曰铁雨。</li> <li>正式, 大物值之多毙。谣俗号曰铁雨。</li> <li>正式, 大物 化合用 (1)</li> <li>正式, 不同 (1)<td></td><td>Guāng.</td><td></td></li></ul>		Guāng.	
<ul> <li>梁王,王并庖人戮之。</li> <li>Péng, to present his head to Prince Liáng, the king then executed the cook.</li> <li>至治元年,玉案山产小赤犬,群吠 遍野。占云,天狗坠地为赤犬,其下 有大军覆境。又时雨铁,民舍、山石 皆穿,人物值之多毙。谣俗号曰铁雨。</li> <li>Péng, to present his head to Prince Liáng, the king then executed the cook.</li> <li>In the 1st year of Zhìzhì, in Yùàn mountain a small red dog was born, it barked all over the place. They consulted an oracle: When a heavenly dog falls from the sky as a red dog, then a mighty army would attack the borders. At the time it also rained iron, piercing houses and mountains, people and their crops all dropped dead.</li> </ul>	光将高蓬守罗那关,梁王密招之,	Guāng gave Gāopéng Luōnà gate to defend, Prince Liáng secretly	
<ul> <li>至治元年,玉案山产小赤犬,群吠 遍野。占云,天狗坠地为赤犬,其下 有大军覆境。又时雨铁,民舍、山石 皆穿,人物值之多毙。谣俗号曰铁雨。</li> <li>正 the cook.</li> <li>In the ist year of Zhìzhì, in Yùàn mountain a small red dog was born, it barked all over the place. They consulted an oracle: When a heavenly dog falls from the sky as a red dog, then a mighty army would attack the borders. At the time it also rained iron, piercing houses and mountains, people and their crops all dropped dead.</li> </ul>	不从,乃赂蓬庖人刺蓬,以其首献	recruited him, he did not obey, so he bribed Péng's cook to stab	滇载记 6oo
至治元年,玉案山产小赤犬,群吠 遍野。占云,天狗坠地为赤犬,其下 有大军覆境。又时雨铁,民舍、山石 皆穿,人物值之多毙。谣俗号曰铁雨。In the 1st year of Zhìzhì, in Yùàn mountain a small red dog was born, it barked all over the place. They consulted an oracle: When a heavenly dog falls from the sky as a red dog, then a mighty army would attack the borders. At the time it also rained iron, piercing houses and mountains, people and their crops all dropped dead.	梁王,王并庖人戮之。	Péng, to present his head to Prince Liáng, the king then executed	
<ul> <li>遍野。占云,天狗坠地为赤犬,其下</li> <li>有大军覆境。又时雨铁,民舍、山石</li> <li>皆穿,人物值之多毙。谣俗号曰铁雨。</li> <li>born, it barked all over the place. They consulted an oracle: When</li> <li>a heavenly dog falls from the sky as a red dog, then a mighty army</li> <li>i would attack the borders. At the time it also rained iron, piercing</li> <li>houses and mountains, people and their crops all dropped dead.</li> </ul>		the cook.	
有大军覆境。又时雨铁,民舍、山石 皆穿,人物值之多毙。谣俗号曰铁雨。 <b>a heavenly dog falls from the sky as a red dog</b> , then a mighty army <sub>滇载记 605</sub> would attack the borders. At the time it also rained iron, piercing houses and mountains, people and their crops all dropped dead.	至治元年,玉案山产小赤犬,群吠	In the 1st year of Zhìzhì, in Yùàn mountain a small red dog was	
皆穿,人物值之多毙。谣俗号曰铁雨。 would attack the borders. At the time it also rained iron, piercing houses and mountains, people and their crops all dropped dead.	遍野。占云,天狗坠地为赤犬,其下	born, it barked all over the place. They consulted an oracle: When	
houses and mountains, people and their crops all dropped dead.	有大军覆境。又时雨铁,民舍、山石	a heavenly dog falls from the sky as a red dog, then a mighty army	滇载记 605
	皆穿,人物值之多毙。谣俗号曰铁雨。	would attack the borders. At the time it also rained iron, piercing	
The people called it the iron rain.		houses and mountains, people and their crops all dropped dead.	
		The people called it the iron rain.	

*r* 594: Yuán Dàdé ] 1297–1307 СЕ.

r 595: Prince Liáng ] Prince Liáng 梁王 was a title given to Yuán officials ruling in Yúnnán, they were offspring of Kublai Khan 忽必烈, see Robinson (2020), p. 225.

*r* 596: he divided the territory with the Duàn clan ] Liángwáng 梁王 ruled in Shànchǎn, while the Duàn clan 段氏 ruled Dàlǐ 大理.

 $r_{597}$ : In the 2nd year of Zhìdà ] 1309 CE.

*r* 603: In the 1st year of Zhìzhì ] 1321 CE.

r 604–605: When a heavenly dog falls from the sky as a red dog ] A *tiān gǒu* 天狗 stands for a meteor, a red one must be particularly visible, maybe appearing as a fireball.

### The 9th Generation: Duàn Gōng 段功

The main event during the administration of Duàn Gōng 段功, $^{(22)}$  who ruled 1252–1368 CE, was the short-lived Míng Xià dynasty 明夏 in Sìchuān founded by rebel-leader Míng Yùzhēn 明玉珍, see Fölster (2009), pp. 39–42.

	九代总管段功。	The 9th generation route commander was called Duàn Gōng.
滇载记 61o	初袭爵,为蒙化知府。	In the beginning he received the hereditary title and was appoin-
		ted as Ménghuà prefect.
	至正十二年,继立为总管。	In the 12th year of Zhìzhèng, he inherited the title of route com-
		mander.
	癸卯,明玉珍自楚入蜀,据之,分兵	In <i>guǐmǎo</i> , Míng Yùzhēn entered Shǔ from Chǔ Guó, and occupied
滇载记 615	四掠,号曰红巾。	it, divided the troops and <b>plundered everywhere</b> , they were called
		the Red Turbans.
	明玉珍自将红巾三万,攻云南。	Míng Yùzhēn himself led thirty thousand Red Turbans and at-
		tacked Yúnnán.
	梁王及宪司官皆奔威楚,诸部悉乱。	Prince Liáng and the surveillance commission officials fled to
		Wēichǔ, all regions were in turmoil.
	功谋于员外杨渊海, 渊海卦之吉,	Gōng consulted with the eminent official Yáng Yuānhǎi, Yuānhǎi's
	乃进兵至吕阁,败红巾于关滩江,	omen was auspicious, and he advanced troops to L $\check{ ext{u}}$ gé, defeated
	杀获千计。	the Red Turbans at Guāntān River, killed and enslaved thousands.
	红巾收合馀衄,再战,复胜,杀段氏	The Red Turbans suffered defeat, again went into battle, he
滇载记 625	骁酋铁万户。	emerged victorius again, and killed the Duàn Shì valient chief Tiě
		Wànhù.
	红巾屯古田寺,段氏夕潜火其寺,	The Red Turbans were stationed in the old Gǔtián temple, the
	红巾军乱,死者什七八。	Duàn clan at night set his temple on fire, the Red Turbans army
		was in turmoil, some seven or eight [out of ten] perished.
滇载记 63o	又追至回磴关,大败之。	Then he chased them to Huídèng pass, dealing them a great defeat.
	红巾大呼之曰:「待明年,来复仇。」	Red Turbans shouted out loud: 'Wait for next year, then we will
		take revenge.'
	时功在战间,得玉珍母寄其子书,	During the battles Gong captured a letter sent by Yùzhēn's mother
	云尔征南务得之,不得轻还,军少	to her son, saying 'You must march south to do what is required,
滇载记 635	粮乏,我当添补。杨渊海效其书迹,	and must not rashly retreat. If the troops are insufficient or the
	易之曰:「中国兵来急,尔宜早归。」	rations lacking, I will take care of replenishments.' Yáng Yuānhǎi
	遂募能入红军营者,有小卒陈惠愿	faked her writing and changed it to: 'China's troops are arriving
	行。玉珍得书,恐国中有变,又新失	promptly, retreat as early as possible.' Then he recruited someone
	利,遂急收军。功追之至七星关,又	capable to enter the Red Turbans' camp, the footsoldier Chén Huì

*r* 614: In *guǐmǎo* ] 1363 се.

*r* 615: plundered everywhere ] unclear

r617: Míng Yùzhēn ] Míng Yùzhēn 明玉珍

*r* 612: In the 12th year of Zhìzhèng ] 1352 CE.

r 617: himself ] That Míng Yùzhēn 明玉珍 personally led the troops is not confirmed in other sources, see Fölster (2009), p. 42.

 $<sup>^{(22)}\,</sup>$  see illustration 9, right.

胜之而还。 was willing to go. Yùzhēn received the letter, and feared that 滇载记 640 China's troops had changed, and he would suffer another defeat, so he urgenly gathered his troops. Gong chased them to Qixing pass and after another victory retreated. The following part then shows the power of Yáng Shèn 杨慎's storytelling craft as he fictionalizes the power struggle into an intricate love story. The story had so much allure that in the 20th century the famous writer Guo Moruo 郭沫若 used it as the base for this play 'Peacock's Gallbladder'《孔雀 肝)》(23) 红巾既退,梁王深德段功,以女阿 The Red Turbans retreated and Prince Liáng was deeply grateful to Duàn Gōng, gave him his daughter Āgái as wife, and appointed 滇载记 645 是,威望大著于西南。 him as Yúnnán administrator. From then on, Gōng's prestige grew greatly in the south-west. 梁王曲意奉之,功恋恋不肯归国。其 Prince Liáng flattered him with titles and Gong reluctantly 大理夫人高氏,寄乐府促之归,其 submitted to the state. His Dàli wife of the Gao clan sent him a 词曰: Yuèfǔ urging him to return, its lyrics read: 滇载记 65o 风卷残云, A strong wind scatters the clouds, 九霄冉冉逐。 hanging softly from the highest heaven, 龙池无偶, The dragon pond is without a spouse, 水云一片绿。 The water and the clouds are one expanse of green. 滇载记 655 寂寞倚屏帏, Lonely leaning against the screen, 春雨纷纷促。 The spring rains are slowly approaching. 蜀锦半床闲。鸳鸯独自宿。 Brocade from Shù covers half the bed. 好语我将军, The mandarin duck sleeps alone. 只恐乐极生悲冤鬼哭。 I say to my general 滇载记 66o I only fear that extreme joy will bring sorrow making a grieving spirit cry 功得书及归,既而复往。其臣杨智、 Gong received the letter and returned, but soon left again. His of-张希乔留之,不听,既至善阐,梁人 ficials Yáng Zhì and Zhāng Xīqiáo attempted to detain him, but he 滇载记 665 私语梁王曰:「段平章复来,有吞金 did not listen. When he arrived in Shànchǎn, the people of Liáng 马、咽碧鸡之心矣。 盍早图之。| whispered to Prince Liáng, saying: 'The Duàn administrator is coming again, he has the intention to swallow the golden horse and an-

梁王始启疑于平章,密召阿禚主,

whispered to Prince Liáng, saying: "The Duàn administrator is coming again, he has the intention **to swallow the golden horse and annex the jade chicken**. You must make a plan as soon as possible.' 径主, Prince Liáng began to doubt the administrator and secretly sent

r650: to return ] i.e. to Dàlǐ 大理.

r 668–669: to swallow the golden horse and annex the jade chicken ] golden horse 金马 and jade chicken 碧鸡 stand for central Yúnnán.

<sup>(23)</sup> see Yu (2018).

滇载记 670

滇载记 68o 滇载记 685	命之曰:「亲莫若父母,宝莫若社稷。 功今志不灭我不已。脱无彼,犹有他 平章,不失富贵也。今付汝以孔雀胆 一具,乘便可毒殪之。」 主潸然不敢受命,夜寂人定,私语 平章曰:「我父忌阿奴,愿与阿奴西 归。」 因出毒具示之,平章曰:「我有功尔 家。我趾自蹶伤,尔父尚尝为我裹 之,尔何造言至此?」三谏之,终不 听。 明日,邀功东寺演梵,至通济桥,马 逸,因令番将格杀之。 阿 襠 主闻 变,失声哭曰:「昨 瞑烛 下,才讲与阿奴,云南施宗、施秀 烟花殒身。今日果然!阿奴虽死,奴 不负信黄泉也。」 欲自尽,梁王防卫者乃万方。	a letter to princess Ågái, the letter read: 'There is no closer rela- tion than father and mother, there is no greater treasure than <b>the</b> <b>state</b> . Gōng now ceaselessly proclaims not wanting to destroy me. I cannot get rid of him, he is even my administrator, he is certainly weathy and high-ranking. Today I present a peacock gallbladder to you, use it when it is convenient to kill him with poison.' The distraught princess did not dare to carry out the order, and in the middle of the night, she privately said to the administrator: 'My father envies Ā Nú, I wish to return with Ā Nú <b>to the west</b> .' She took out the poison to show it to him, the administrator said: 'I have made merit to marry you. When I hurt my foot stumbling your father still bandaged it for me, where have you heard this ru- mor?' She admonished him three times, but in the end he did not listen. The next day, he paid a visit to the eastern temple to practice Buddhism, he arrived at Tōngjì bridge, his horse escaped, and a Fān commander killed him in a fight. When princess Ågái heard this, she cried with breaking voice: 'Yes- terday at night under the candle, I spoke with Ā Nú, Yúnnán's Shī Zōng and Shī Xiù light fireworks over his death. It happened today! Ă Nú died, but he must not suffer in the netherworld.' She tried to kill herself, but Prince Liáng's guards watched every- where.
滇载记 695	主愁愤作诗曰: 吾家住在雁门深, 一片闲云到滇海。 心悬明月照青天, 青天不语今三载。	Grieving, princess Āgái wrote a poem: My home lies deep inside <b>goose</b> gate, A drifting cloud reached the Sea of Diān. My heart is suspended like the moon in the sky. Three years of silent nights have passed.
滇载记 700	欲随明月到苍山, 悮我一生路踏里彩[锦被名也]。 吐噜吐噜段阿奴[吐噜,可惜也], 施宗施秀同奴歹[歹,不好也]。 云片波粼不见人, 押不芦花颜色改[押不芦,乃北方起死	I desire to follow the moon to Cāngshān, Denying me a life of happiness. I pity my Duàn Ā Nú, Shī Zōng and Shī Xiù both enemies of Ā Nú, Clouds and waves unseen by men, The <b>Yābùlú flower</b> changes colour,
滇载记 705	回生草名]。 肉屏独坐细思量[肉屏,骆驼背也],	Alone on a horse's back, I ponder deeply, The pine forests of the Western Hills sprinkled with frost.

 $r_{672-673}$ : the state ] literally, the altars to the earth gods, but since it was the responsibility of the state to maintain them, I think this expression is meant to mean the (Mongol) state here.

 $r6_{79}$ : Ā Nú ] Ā Nú 阿奴 is her nickname for her husband Duàn Gōng 段功.

 $r_{679}$ : to the west ] i.e. Dàlǐ.

*r* 695: goose ] geese are the bearers of letters from afar, see Ch'en and Mote (2002), p. 16

 $r_{704}$ : Yābùlú flower ] As the commentary says, a flower that brings the dying back to life.

西山铁立霜潇洒。」[铁立,松林也]		
平章从官员外杨渊海,亦题诗粉壁,	The administrator and subordinate official Yáng Yuānhǎi also in-	
饮药而卒,诗曰:	scribed a poem on a wall, then took poison and died. The poem	
	goes:	滇载记 710
半纸功名百战身,	Half a sheet of glory for a life of hundred battles,	
不堪今日总红尘。	Today it all turns to dust and smoke,	
死生自古皆由命,	Life and death have always been set by fate,	
祸福于今岂怨人。	How can one blame others for blessing or misfortune,	
蝴蝶梦残滇海月,	The dream of a butterflies fades under the moon of the Sea of	滇载记 715
杜鹃啼破点苍春。	Diān,	
哀怜永诀云南土,	The cuckoo cries and breaks the spring of Diǎncāng.	
锦酒休教洒泪频。	With sorrow I part from the lands of Yúnnán,	
	Good fortune causes sorrow.	
		滇载记 <b>72</b> 0
梁王哀渊海之名, 绻意欲为己用,	Prince Liáng mourned Yuānhǎi's fame, and twistedly wanted to	
见诗痛悼之,乃厚恤之,令随平章	used it for personal gains. But when he saw the poem he mourned	
槥归葬大理。	him deeply and ordered the administrator's coffin be returned to	
	Dàlĭ for burial.	

Ì

### The 10th Generation: Duàn Bǎo 段宝

Duàn Bǎo 段宝 ruled 1368–1381 CE.<sup>(24)</sup>

十代总管信苴段宝,功之子。	The 10th generation route commander was Prince Duàn Bǎo,	滇载记 725
	Gōng's son.	
洪武元年,嗣职。	In the 1st year of Hóngwǔ, he inherited the office.	
梁王遣矢刺平章,七攻大理,不克,	Prince Liáng sent the administrator Shǐlà to attacke Dàlí seven	
乃讲和,奏升宝为云南左丞。	times without success, then made a truce, and sent a memorial to	
	promote Bǎo to Yúnnán left aide.	滇载记 <sub>73</sub> o
未几,明玉珍复侵善阐,梁王遣叔	Shortly after, the Míng Yùzhēn invaded Shànchǎn again,	
铁木的罕借兵大理,时宝已长,答	Liángwáng sent his uncle Tiěmù Dehǎn to borrow troops from	
书云:	Dàlǐ, at that time Bǎo had already grown up and sent a letter in	
	reply:	
		滇载记 735

1728: 梁王遣矢刺平章,七攻大理] this passage appears differently in the various editions of the 'Unoffical History of Nánzhào'《南诏野史》, sometimes with Píngzhāng 平章 inserted, sometimes not, so that Shǐcìqī 矢刺七 could also be read as a name, as in Sainson (1904), p. 141, see also Mù Qín 木芹 (1990), p. 364.

*r*<sub>727</sub>: In the 1st year of Hóngwǔ ] 1368 CE.  $r_{732}$ : his uncle Tiěmù Dehǎn ] unclear name.

<sup>(24)</sup> illustration 9, left.

	杀虎子而还喂其虎母,	Killing the tiger cub and feeding it to its mother,
	分狙栗而自诈其狙公。	Dividing the monkey nuts and deceiving the monkey chief,
	假途灭虢,献璧吞虞。	Borrowing the road to crush Guó, offering a $bi$ to choke Yú,
	金印玉书,乃为钓鱼之香饵。	The golden seal and the jade letter are nothing but bait for fishing.
滇载记 740	绣闺淑女,自设掩雉之网罗。	The virtuous lady set herself the trap for the pheasant.
	况平章既亡,弟兄罄绝,	The administrator dead, his brothers are diminished.
	今止遗一獒一奴,	What remains is a dog and a servant.
	奴再赘华黎氏,	The servant marries into the Chinese Lí clan,
	獒又可配阿禚妃,	The dog can mate with princess Āgái.
滇载记 745	如此事诺,	If this is promised,
	我必借大兵。	I will surely lend an army.
	如其不可,待金马山换作点苍山,	If not, I will wait for Golden Horse Mountain exchanged for
	昆明池改作西洱河时,来矣。	Diǎncāng Mountains,
		And Kūnmíng Lake changed for Xīěr River – then I will come.
	书后附以诗云:	At the end of the letter he added a poem, saying:
	烽火狼烟信不符,	Beacon fires and smoke signals bring false alarms,
	骊山举戏是支吾。	The game at Mount Lí was a mere deception.
滇载记 755	平章枉丧红罗帐,	The administrator unjustly perished within the red silk curtains,
	员外虚题粉璧图。	The official's empty poem adorns the painted wall.
	凤别岐山祥兆隐,	The phoenix departed from Qí Mountain, hiding the auspicious
	麟游郊薮瑞光无。	signs,
	自从界限鸿沟后,	The unicorn roamed the wilds, with no light of good omen.
滇载记 76o	成败兴哀不属吾。	Since the boundary at Hónggōu was drawn,
		Success and failure, rise and fall, are no longer mine to bear.
	梁王见之,恨宝入骨。	Prince Liáng saw this, he hated Bǎo to his bones.

It follows the story of Duàn Sēngnú 段僧奴, the sister of Duàn Bǎo 段宝 and daughter of Duàn Gōng 段功, who married the Jiànchāng 建昌 official Ā Lí 阿黎 in 1372 CE.<sup>(25)</sup>

平章女僧奴志恒不忘复仇,将适建 <sub>漢载记765</sub> 昌阿黎氏出,手刺绣文旗以与宝 曰:「我自束发,闻母溺父冤,恨非 男子不能报,此旗所以识也。今归夫 家,收合东兵,飞檄西洱,汝急应兵 会善阐。」 The administrator's sister Sēngnú was intent to never forget revenge. As she was about to marry  $\overline{A}$  Lí in Jiànchāng, she embroidered a flag with characters and gave it to Bǎo, saying: 'I tied up my hair when I heard of my mother drowning and my father's sorrow, I hate not being a man to exact revenge, this flag symbols my intention. Now as I am moving to my husband's

 $r_{738}$ : Borrowing the road to crush Guó, offering a bi to choke Yú, ] *jiǎtúmièguó* 假途灭號 is an idiom expressing a war strategy of deception to defeat two enemies: Jìn 晋 wanted to defeat Guó 號, but needed to pass through Yú 虞 first, however after defeating Guó it also annexed Yú.

<sup>(25)</sup> see Zhāng Xílù 张锡禄 (2015), p. 160.

	family, I will quickly unite the soldiers in the east, I am sending this urgent messages to Xīěr, you must quickly respond and join forces in Shànchǎn.'	滇载记 770
又作诗二章,曰:	She also wrote two poems:	滇载记 775
瑚勾我出香闺,	Coral hooks draw me out of the fragrant boudoir,	供我儿 775
蒲目潸然泪湿衣。	Eyes filled with tears, soaking my clothes.	
水鉴银台前长大,	I grew up before the silver mirror stand,	
金枝玉叶下芳菲,	Blossoming under golden branches and jade leaves.	
鸟飞兔走频来往,	Birds fly and rabbits run, coming and going frequently,	滇载记 78o
桂馥梅馨不暂移。	The fragrance of osmanthus and the scent of plum never fade.	
惆怅同胞未忍别,	Reluctant to part from my sibling,	
应知含恨点苍低。	I know the grief clouds Cangshan with sorrow.	
何彼秾秾花自红,	Why are those flowers so lush and red,	滇载记 <sub>7</sub> 85
归车独别洱江东。	As the return carriage leaves the east of Erjiang alone?	
鸿台燕苑难经目,	The grand sights of Hongtai and Yan Garden are hard to see,	
风刺霜刀易塞胸。	Wind and frost pierce my heart easily.	
云旧山高连水远,	Clouds over the old mountains link with distant waters,	
月新春叠与秋重。	New moons and springs pile up with autumn's weight.	滇载记 790
泪珠恰似通宵雨,	Tears fall like rain throughout the night,	
千里关河几处逢。	How many times do I encounter the barriers and rivers over a thousand miles?	
后穴园室向立正甘入院 奥甘加矾		\uder +-1 \ −3
后宝闻高皇帝开基金陵,遣其叔段 真,自会川入京,奉表归款,朝廷亦	Later, when Bǎo heard that <b>the emperor had laid the foundation</b> <b>for [the capital] Jīnlíng</b> he sent his uncle Duàn Zhēn to enter the	滇载记 795
以书报之 [见御制文集]。	capital from Huichuān, presenting a memorial of submission, the	
	court responded with a letter. [see 'Imperial Collection of Literary	
	Works'.].	
		滇载记 8oo
时有妖巫女,歌曰:	At the time there was a witch who sang,	
莫道君为山海主,山海笑谐谐。	There is no way for the Lord to become ruler of mountains and	
园中花谢千万朵,别有明主来。	seas, mountains and seas laugh together.	
	In the gardens countless flowers wither, an enlightened ruler will	滇载记 8o5
	come	

 $r_{795-796}$ : the emperor had laid the foundation for [the capital] Jīnlíng ] Míng emperor Hóngwǔ 明洪武 made the old Jīnlíng 金陵 capital of China, calling it Nánjīng 南京.

*r*798–799: see '*Imperial Collection of Literary Works*'] This refers to a passage in the '*Imperial Collection of Literary Works*' 《高皇帝御制文集》, 第二卷

	宝数日疾卒,子明嗣。	Duàn Bǎo fell ill and after a few days passed away, his son Míng inherited the office.
	The 11th Generation: Duàn Míng 段	时
	See illustration 9, right.	
滇载记 <b>8</b> 10	十一代总管信苴段明。 洪武十四年,授以宣慰。	The 11th generation route commander Prince Duàn Míng. In the 14th year of Hóngwǔ, he was made pacification commis- sioner.
	壬戌春正月,天兵破善阐,梁王自 鸩,党属悉俘。	<b>In spring, in the 1st month of the</b> <i>rénxū</i> <b>year</b> , imperial troops at- tacked Shànchǎn, Prince Liáng drank poisoned wine, his family and underlings were all taken captive.
	明遣都使张元亨,驰书颍川侯傅友 德、西平侯沐英。麾下曰:	<b>Míng</b> sent the area command envoy Zhāng Yuánhēng with an ur- gent letter to the marquis of Yǐngchuān Fù Yǒudé and the marquis of Xīpíng Mù Yīng. It stated:
滇载记 <b>8</b> 20	「大理乃唐交绥之外国,善阐实宋斧 画之馀邦,难列营屯,徒劳兵甲,请 依唐宋故事宽我。蒙段奉正朔,佩华 篆,比年一小贡,三年一大贡。」	'Dàlĭ is state outside <b>Táng's Jiāosuī</b> , while Shànchǎn is in fact a state inside the region draw by the Sòng axe. It is difficult to establish camps and futile to supply arms. I petition that you show lenience like the precedent of the Táng and Sòng. The Méng clan and the Duàn respected the calendar, cherished the seals of China, and sent a small tribute mission every year and a large one every three years.'
	友德怒,栲辱其使。	Youdé was angry, whipped and insulted the envoy.
滇载记 830	明再上书曰: 「汉武习战,仅置益州;元祖亲征, 只缘善阐。乞冀班师。」	Míng once again send a letter to the emperor, saying: 'Hàn emperor Wǔ engaged in battles, but only established Yìzhōu, Kublai Khan personally led an expedition but alone got hold of Shànchǎn. I hope that you will retreat the troops.'
滇载记 8 <u>35</u>	友德答明书曰: 「我大明龙飞淮甸, 混一区宇, 陋汉、 唐之小智, 卑宋、元之浅图, 天兵所 至, 神龙助阵, 天地应符。汝段氏接 武蒙氏, 运已绝于元世, 宽命延息 以至于今, 我师已歼梁王, 报汝世 仇, 不降何待?」	Yǒudé replied to Míng's letter, saying: 'We, the great Míng, rising like a dragon from the fields of Huái, uni- fying the realm, passing the small wisdom of the Hàn and Táng and the simple strategies of the Sòng and Yuán, Whereever the imper- ial forces go divine dragons lend assistance, heaen and earth are in harmony. You, the Duàn clan, have followed the Méng clan, but your mandate was cut off by Yuán, lenient orders have allowed you to continue until now. My troops have already eliminated Prince Liáng, thus eliminating your blood feud. Why do you hesitate to

r 811: In the 14th year of Hóngwủ ] 1381 CE.

*r* 813: In spring, in the 1st month of the  $r\acute{e}nx\bar{u}$  year ] 1381 CE.

r816: Míng ] i.e. Duàn Míng.

r819: Táng's Jiāosuī ] Jiāosuī 交绥 is an unclear term.

三月,傅、沐二将分兵,宵缘点苍 颠,绕出下关之背,先树旗帜。 迟明,段兵惊溃,大军策马乱流而 济,明遂就擒,并其二子仁、义至金 陵。 太祖圣谕曰:	surrender?' In the 3rd month, the two generals Fù and Mù divided their troops, and at night they went along the Diǎncāng peaks, and averting the mountains emerged at the back of Xiàguān, planting their banner. At dawn, the Duàn soldiers were panic stricken and fled, the grand general whipped his horse and crossed the turbulent river, Míng was captured and with his sons Rén and Yì taken to Jīnlíng. The Founding Emperor issued an edict saying:	滇载记 845
「尔父宝曾有降表,朕不忍废。」	'Your father Bǎo had already petitioned to surrender, I cannot bear	滇载记 85o
赐长子名归仁,授永昌卫镇抚。次子 名归义,授雁门卫镇抚,大理悉定。	to ignore it.' He granted his eldest son the name Guīrén, appointing im as pacification officer of the Yǒngchāng guard. The second son was given the name Guīyì and was appointed pacification officer of Yànmén guard. Dàlĭ was all secured.	滇载记 855
是夏六月,元普颜秾复叛,据佛光 寨[在邓州东北]。 先不华叛,据邓州。 甲子正月十七日,川侯傅友德,复	In the summer, in the 6th month, the Yuán Pǔ Yánnóng rebelled again, occupied Fóguāng stockade [north-east of Dèngzhōu] Earlier, 不华 had rebelled and occupied Dèngzhōu. On the þ7 day of the 1st month of the <i>jiǎzǐ</i> year, the Chuān	0.4472 033
自七星关回军大理,平邓川,破佛 光寨,因定赋法,筑城隍,设卫堡, 立学校,比于中州列郡焉。	Marquis Fù Yǒudé led his troops back from Qīxīng pass back to Dàlǐ, pacified Dèngchuān, destroyed Fóguāng stockade, estab- lished a tax system, constructed a moat, established defence fort- resses, set up schools, in this way setting it up like the prefectures in the central regions.	滇载记 <b>86</b> 0
逸史氏曰:史称西南夷靡,莫之属 以什数,滇最大。	The <b>unofficial historian</b> says: The historical records show that the western and southern <i>Yi</i> were fragmented, not yet subordinate, and counted several dozen, Diān the most powerful.	滇载记 865
元封中,以兵临,滇王举国降,然未 有称也。	<b>During the Yuánfēng period</b> , they were confronted by military force, the king of Diān surrendered with his whole state, never to	海井江。
及张氏受姓,后世迭君长者,蒙氏、 郑氏、赵氏、杨氏、段氏、高氏,凡七 姓,惟蒙、段最久,故著称焉。	be mentioned again. The Zhāng clan was conferred a name, in later generations many rulers succeeded each other, the Méng clan, the Zhèng clan, the Zhào clan, the Yáng clan, the Duàn clan, the Gāo clan – all in all seven families. Of them the Méng and the Duàn ruled the longest,	滇载记 87o
	so they are the best known.	滇载记 875

*r* 843: In the 3rd month ] 1381 CE.

r848: Jīnlíng] The Míng capital, i.e. Nánjīng 南京.

*r* 856: In the summer, in the 6th month ] 1381 CE.

*r* 859: On the  $b_7$  day of the 1st month of the *jiǎzǐ* year ] 29th January 1384.

r865: unofficial historian ] this expression mimicks Sīmǎ Qiān 司马迁's introductions to his historical commentary, where he calls himself Tàishǐgōng 太史公, the 'The Grand Historian', but draws attention to the fact that he was exiled and writing a historical work without being in office. Pidhainy (2008), p. 31 translates the term as 'historian in retirement'.

r868: During the Yuánfēng period ] reign period of Hàn Wǔdì 汉武帝, 110–104BC.

	夷裔盗名号,互起灭,若蜂蚁然,不	Their Yí descendants usurped the titles, rising and falling, just like
	足录也。	ants, it is not worthwhile to record them.
	然至与中夏交绥抗陵,疲我齐民,	Then they established contact with China fighting and resisting,
	世主甘心焉。	exhausting our people, their rulers enjoying it.
滇载记 88o	以无用戕有用,是可慨已。	To use the useless to harm the useful – that is truly lamentable.

It follows a most important passage in which Yáng Shèn 杨慎 reveals his sources: a book written in the local language using Chinese characters called "《白古通玄峰年运志》. The meaning of this passage is disputed: some say, the "《白古通玄峰年运志》 is one book with a long title, others claim that he refers to two separate books called '*Báigǔtōng*'《白古通》 and '*Xuánfēng Era Gazetteer*'《玄峰年运志》 respectively. For the debate, see Hóu Chōng 侯冲 (2011).

	汉司马氏传西南夷, 诚有意哉!余 婴罪投裔, 求蒙、段之故于图经而不 得也。	The Hàn dynastay Sīmǎ family wrote the history of the western and southern $Y'_i$ – they had sincere intention! I convicted and exiled, searched for the origins of the Méng and Duàn in the books and scriptures, but could not find anything.
滇载记 885	问其籍于旧家,有《白古通玄峰年运志》,其书。用僰文,义兼众教,稍为	So, I asked the old families about their books and found a book called ". It is written in Bó characters, encompassing many mean-
	删正,令其可读。	ings I have some left out and corrected others, to make it readable.
	其可载者,盖尽此矣。	This is all that can be recounted here, so this stops here.
	滇僰于三代为荒服,汉仅剽分其方,	Diān and Bó were during <b>the three dynasties</b> wild and uncivilized
滇载记 89o	虽胡元兵力胜之,而不能守也。	regions, the Hàn merely conquered a part of their lands, and even
		though the troops of the barbarian Yuán defeated them, they could not control them.
	于今,列箐落而郡县之,驯鳞介而	Today, the ravines and valleys have been organized into
	衣裳之,华风沃泽,同域共贯,昭	commanderies and counties, the people have been tamed and
滇载记 895	代恢宇,前是孰并?传称神农地过	clothed, the wind of enlightenment has made the swamps fertile,
	日月之表,几近是哉!夫分隔之乱,	the territories are united, the current dynasty's vast territory – can
	昔如彼;大一统之治,今若此。干羽 不警,百五十年。	a previous one match them? The traditions say that Shénnóng's land exceeded that of the sun and moon, we are nearly there!
	小言,口五十千。	The divisions of the past were once such chaos, the great unity of
		this government is like this. Weapons have fallen silent for one
		hundred and fifty years.
	探言其故,则金匮秘文,缙绅罕睹,	Exploring the reasons, it is because the secret writings of the
	况荒徼乎?馀慕宋司马氏作《通鉴》,	golden bookshelves are seldom seen by the officials, let alone those
	采获小说,若《河洛行年纪》、《广陵妖	of these desolate lands. I admire the Sòng Sīmǎ family who wrote
滇载记 905	乱志》者,百二十家,法孔子著《春 秋》,取群书于百二十国也。	the 'Comprehensive Mirror for Aid in Government', gathering stor-
	你//,软矸节1日————————————————————————————————————	ies, like the 'Annals of the Yellow and Luo River' and the 'Chronicle

r889: the three dynasties ] i.e. Xià Dynasty 夏朝, Shāng Dynasty 商朝, and Zhōu dynasty 周朝, everything before the Hàn dynasty 汉朝.

r 904–905: the Sòng Sīmǎ family who wrote the 'Comprehensive Mirror for Aid in Government'] i.e. Sīmǎ lake 司马池 and his son Sīmǎ Guāng 司马光.

因是有感,遂纂蒙、段事以为《滇载 记》,其诸君子祖《春秋》而述,二司 马氏者,亦将有取于斯焉。 *of the Guǎnglíng Rebellion*' from one hundred and twenty families, following the way Kǒngzǐ edited the spring and autumn period who drew from one hundred and twenty states. Inspired by this, I have compiled the affairs of the Méng and Duàn into the '*Historical Records of Diān*', narrating it **like our ancestor wrote the** and **the two Sīmǎ** have also been used.

滇载记 910

## 3.10 Preface to the 'Historical Records of Diān'《滇载记》《滇载记序》

In 1543 CE, the official Jiāng Lóng 姜龙, *sobriquet* 号 Mèngbīn 梦宾, wrote an introduction to the text, that reveals that he was a collaborator on the text. While this preface mostly contains the usual stanzas, a passage sheds a little further light on the main source of the text, the '*Báigǔtōng*' 《白古通》.

#### 滇载记序

云南古西南外徽,虽唐虞之声教弗 暨焉。王制出学简,不帅教屏诸西方 者,曰僰。今其志犹云汉僰同风,岂 以是与秦庄襄略地至滇,遂留不返。 汉张骞之徒乃通滇,滇之言曰:"汉 孰与我大?"是未始知有中国也。

嗣后虽尝置郡,特遥领于益州部, 徒有其名,縻之而已。昭烈时,分 建宁置云南郡。晋唐以来,畔服靡 常。迨我明大一统,荒遏悉臣,于是 云南始入版图,与侯甸齿。二百年 来,渐濡涵育,文献聿兴。寝寝之乎 追躅上国,圣化覃被之功,殆谓贤 于尧舜,无论秦汉矣。

**第志记荒落**, 史有阙文焉。《一统志》

#### Preface to the 'Historical Records of Diān'

Yúnnán, an ancient outlying region of the south-west, did not attain the cultural enlightenment of Tángyáo and Yúshùn. Its royal system, based on simple teachings did not lead the teachings to those screened off in the the western regions, which were called Bó. 滇载记5 Today, the records still say that Hàn and Bó shared their customs, is it possible that during the Qín Zhuāng Xiāng invaded Diān to never return? During the Hàn dynasty Zhāng Qiān's troops connected Diān and Diān asked them: 'The Hàn is as powerful as we are?' They had not yet heard of China. 滇载记10 Afterwards, although a commandery was established it was specially governed from the distant Yìzhou region, this was a misleading as it was only governed lightly. During the time of Zhāoliè, Jiànníng was divided and Yúnnán commandery established. From the Jìn and Táng on, there was constant rebellion and submission, 滇载记15 until through the great unification of our current dynasty the desolate regions received officials and Yúnnán began to be part of our territory, arranged like a distant territorry. For the last two hundred years they gradually received enlightenment and official documents began to thrive. Gradually raising the level of the state, 滇载记 20 these achievements of spreading the sacred enlightenment can be called as worthy as that of Tángyáo and Yúshùn, not to mention the Qín and Hàn. The early records are scattered and systematic history writing is

r 911–912: like our ancestor wrote the ] i.e. the 《春秋》 en = 'Spring and Autumn Annals' in the form of annals.

r912: the two Sīmǎ] again: Sīmǎ lake 司马池 and his son Sīmǎ Guāng 司马光.

 $r_{3:}$ Tángyáo and Yúshùn ] short form for Tángyáo and Yúshùn, legendary Chinese rulers.

r7: Zhuāng Xiāng ] i.e. king Xiāng of Qín 秦襄王.

r13: Zhāoliè ] Zhāoliè is a posthumous title for Liú Bèi 刘备, ruler of the Shǔ Hàn 蜀汉.

- 演载记25 虽因往记取备职方,然亦略矣。顷龙 官仪曹郎坐出位言事黜,俄起废承 乏边圉蜀。杨子用修由侍从论时事, 忤旨谪戍博南。相得甚欢,暇则相与 稽古问俗。茫然莫溯其源,漫索之民 演载记30 间,得敝帙于故博士张云汉氏,曰
- 《白古通》。白即僰从省也,其事怪, 其词鄙。盖滇地与身毒密迩,汉使 之入也,假道于彼。则其怪也有所蒙 袭,无足究者。其书不著作者姓氏, <sub>滇载记35</sub> 亦不审昉于何代,意其经几译而后

属之书文。何由雅也?

余辄以慁杨子芟薙芜陋,括以文章 家法,以成一方之志。词旨简奥,足

演载记45 以补史氏之阙。初,南诏自相雄长, 尝称王于其国,故援偏安之例以载 记目之。嗟乎!古今纂言者惟史为 难,惧其狃于闻而盭其实也。纪要荒 事尤难,惧其远而诞于闻也。

是编也,创于其土之人,而杨子述 <sub>滇载记55</sub> 之,且亲涉其地,与其贤士大夫游, 其见闻弗诞弗诹矣,不亦可传也?

陆子浚明往在谏垣,以直言废家居。 余间出其稿,陆子乃亟为披校缮写 <sub>滇载记60</sub> 入梓,冀衍其传,俾异日职史者有 取焉。

> 夫云南旷古无述,述自今始。二子之 用心亦勤矣。谓龙实与闻其由,宜引

missing. The 'Unified Gazetteer' – although it gathered the records as it was its duty - was very sketchy. Recently the official Lóng at the ministry of rites remonstrated with the emperor and was dismissed from office, and is presently on an unworthy post in the borderlands of Shù. Yáng Shèn Yòngxiū engaged in the the discussion of that affair, disobeyed a decree and was exiled to Bónán. They struck up a friendship, and in their spare time studied the classics and enquired about local customs. Unable to trace their origins, they searched widely with the local people and discovered a shabby book from the former scholar Zhang Yúnhàn, called 'Báigǔtōng', with Bái being a simplification of Bó. Its stories were strange, its language crude. As the lands of Diān are close to Yuāndú, Hàn envoys entered it passing through here. Its strange elements and the history of the Méng are insuffiently investigated. This book did not write down its author and it is unknown when it was written, implying that its writings were translated many times and only later written down as a book. How could it possibly be a refined book?

I therefore asked the dishonoured Yáng Shèn to eliminate the untidy and the coarse, and to edit it as a document, compiling a local *gazetteer*. The words are simple yet profound, suffient to fill the gaps of history writing. In the beginning, Nánzhào rose to power on its own and proclaimed itself a kingdom on its lands. So, guided by the principle of local rule, it has been recorded here as such. Alas! Then and now, of those compiling the stories only the historians find it difficult fearing this would be limited to hearsay and thus perverting the truth. Recording the events of remote regions is especially difficult, as perhaps the distance makes the stories preposterous.

This compilation was begun by local people and written down by Yáng Shèn who personally went to the region, reaching its scholars and senior officials. His accounts are neither exaggerated nor unfounded, so they must be preserved.

Lù Jùnmíng who was once at the censorate and was dismissed for honest words. I found the time to pay him a private visit with a draft, Lù unrolled it for review and carved it into blocks in the hope that it would be disseminated widely so that later historians can benefit from it.

In ancient times Yúnnán did not have any records, their records begin with these. The two men put a real effort into it. It is said that

r 29: Yáng Shèn Yòngxiū ] Yáng Shèn 杨慎, courtesy name Yòngxiū 用修.

*r* 26: the official Lóng ] I think the writer of the preface refers to himself here.

r 29-31: engaged in the the discussion of that affair, disobeyed a decree and was exiled to Bónán] This refers to the *Great Ritual Controversy* 大礼议 that saw Yáng Shèn 杨慎 exiled.

诸端以备岁月之考,故忘其不文以	Lóng had firsthand knowledge of these events, and it is appropriate	滇载记65
附于二子云尔。	to sketch out the elementary principles so that later generations	
嘉靖癸卯秋,古娄姜龙梦宾甫序	can examine them, so ignoring my lack of talent I add these to the	
	work of the two men.	
	In autumn of Jiājìng guǐmǎo, the simple and unworthy Jiāng Lóng,	
	Mèngbīn, wrote this preface.	滇载记 70

# 4 Glossary

- Āgái 阿濭: princess given to Duàn Gōng 段功 as wife – see page 39
- **Āgáizhǔ** 阿苍主: princess Āgái, see pages 40, 42, 49
- Ā Lí 阿黎: official see page 42
- Ā Nú 阿奴: nickname for Duàn Gōng 段功 see page 40
- Āiláo 哀牢: legendary state in western Yúnnán during the Hàn dynasty. It is thought that a graveside discovered in 2012 in Chāngníng 昌宁 is related to it, see Hú Chángchéng 胡长城, Wáng Líruì 王 黎锐 and Yáng Fān 杨帆 (2016), Hú Chángchéng 胡长城 (2014) –
- **Āiláo Shān** 哀牢山: Āiláo Mountains, see page 8, 49
- Āilāo Zhuān 《哀年传》: 'Biographies of Āiláo', one of the oldest texts about Yúnnán, describing the mythology of the ancient land of Āiláo – see page 8, 49
- **Ānguó** 安国: reign period of Zhèng Mǎisì 郑买 嗣 – see page 22, *see* 郑买嗣
- Ānnán 安南: a Táng dynasty protectorate in the area of present-day northern Vietnam. During the Táng dynasty Ānnán was subordinated to Língnándào 岭南 道, the Jīmí 羁縻 region governing the

southern coastal areas. Its official name changed frequently: before 681 it was called Jiāozhōu 交州, then until 757 Ānnán 安南, then until 863 Zhènnán 镇南, then Xíngānnán 行安南 before reverting to Ānnán 安南 in 866. Zhōu Zhènhè 周振 鹤 (2012), pp. 1205–1217 – see page 19

- Bāyǎn 八演: eighth scroll, refers to the nine parts of China in the expression Jiǔzhōu 九州, referring to Liángzhōu 梁州, see Herrmann (1922) – see page 16, 49
- **Báigǔtōng** 《白古通》: '*Báigǔtōng*', ancient text in the Bái language, now lost – see pages 46–49
- Báigǔtōng Xuánfēngnián Yùnzhì《白古通 玄峰年运志》: ", longer title of a lost text more commonly known as《白古通》, but some suggest it is actually two books, the 《白古通》and the《玄峰年运志》 – see page 46, 49
- Bái Guó 白国: Bái kingdom, a, possibly apocryphal, state in western Yúnnán that precedes Nánzhào, first mentioned in the 《纪 古滇说原集》, see Hóu Chōng 侯冲 (2011), p. 113 – see page 11, 49
- Báiguó Yīnyóu《白国因由》: 'Origins of the Bai Kingdom', Qīng collection of Guānyīn legends related to Nánzhào – see page 49

*r* 69: In autumn of Jiājìng *guǐmǎo* ] 1543 CE.

- Báiyá 白崖: pre-Nánzhào polity, thought to Cháng jiāng 长江: Yangzi, major Chinese have been in present-day Mídù 弥渡 valley - see page 10
- **Bái zú** 白族: Bái ethnic group, officially recognized ethnic minority in China, main settlement area around Ěrhǎi – see page 13, 50
- Bǎohé 保和: reign period of Nánzhào ruler Yìmóuxún, 784– – see page 18
- Bǎoshān 保山: present-day important city, the historic Yǒngchāng 永昌 – see page see 永昌
- Běisòng 北宋: Northern Sòng, Chinese dynasty, 960–1127 – see page 50
- **Bì** 璧: a piece of ceremonial jade see page 42
- Bìjī 碧鸡: jade chicken, mythological animal in Yúnnán – see page 39, 50
- **Bōsī** 波斯: Bōsī, see page 31, 50
- Bó 僰: ancient tribal group in Yúnnán see pages 27, 46, 47
- Bónán 博南: see page 48
- Bù 部: region, a very generic term, 'principally suggests a part, section, or division of a whole', see Hucker (1985), 4764 - see pages 15, 47, 50
- **Cānzhèng** 参政: assistant grand councilor, 'Lit., to take part in governance.', see Hucker (1985), 6868 - see pages 35, 36, 50
- Cāngshān 苍山: Cāngshān, mountain range west of Ěrhǎi – see pages 13, 40, 50
- Cáo Wèi 曹魏: one of the three kingdoms during the Sān Guó 三国 period, 220–226 –
- **Chāngníng** 昌宁: present-day a county belonging to Bǎoshān 保山 –

- river see page 50
- 长庆: reign period of Táng Chánggìng Mùzōng 唐穆宗, 821-824 - see page 18
- Chén Huì 陈惠: see page 38
- Chén Hóngshòu 陈洪 绶: late Míng 明 painter – see page 5
- **Chéng** 丞: aide, 'one of the commonest in Chinese official nomenclature', see Hucker (1985), 457 – see page 41, 50
- Chéngdū 成都: capital of Shǔ 蜀, during the Táng dynasty center of administration for Jiànnán 剑南 – see page 18, 19
- Chóngshèng Sì 崇圣寺: Chóngshèng temple, main temple north of Dàlǐ 大理, in front of it are the Three Pagodas 三塔 – see page 50
- emperor Chū 出帝: emperor of the Later Jìn, 942-947 -
- Chǔ Guó 楚国: state of Chù, ancient Chinese state before the Qin dynasty, 704-223BCE - see page 38, 50
- Chǔxióng 楚雄: present-day town west of Kūnmíng 昆明 -
- **Chuān**  $\parallel$ : valley, see pages 10, 45, 50
- **Chūnqiū** 春秋: spring and autumn period, 770-475BCE - see page 47, 50
  - 《春秋》  $py = Ch\bar{u}nqi\bar{u}$ 《春秋》 en = 'Spring and Autumn Annals': Chinese classic, earliest text arranged in annals form, attributed to Kǒngzǐ 孔子 – see page 47, 50
- Cìshǐ 刺史: regional inspector, regional chief, a title commonly awarded to important heads of aboriginal tribes in South and Southwest China – see page 11, 50

- Cuàn 爨: surname, name of powerful clan in the east of Yúnnán before Nánzhào – see page 27
- Cuàn Lóngyán Bēi 《爨龙颜碑》: 'Cuàn Lóngyán Stele', one of the oldest steles found in Yúnnán – see page 51
- Cuànshì 爨氏: Cuàn clan, powerful clan that ruled eastern Yúnnán 云南 prior to Nánzhào – see page 51, see 爨龙颜碑
- **Cuóyé** 嵯耶: reign period of Nánzhào ruler Lóngshùn 隆舜, 889–897 – see page 21, *see* 隆舜
- Dà Méng Guó 大蒙国: Great State of Méng, official name of Nánzhào in the《南诏野 史》- see pages 14, 23, 51
- Dàchánghéguó 大长和国: Great State of Chánghé, - see pages 21, 22, 51
- Dàdé 大德: reign period of Yuán Chéngzōng 元成宗, 1297-1307 - see page 37
- Dàdù Hé 大渡河: Dàdù River, tributary to the Mínjiāng 岷江 in south-west of 成都, during the Sòng dynasty it formed the border to the tribal regions of the south-west. – see pages 20, 27, 51
- Dàfēng Mínguó 大封民国: Great Fēng People's Kingdom, self-appellation of Nánzhào during the reign of Shùnhuàzhēn 舜化贞, 897–902, meaning unclear – see page 11, 51, see 舜化贞&中 兴
- Dàguān 大观: reign period of Sòng Huīzōng 宋徽宗, 1107-1110 - see page 31
- Dàlǐ 大理: see pages 15, 23, 25, 29, 31, 33-35, 37, 39-41, 44, 45, 51
- Dàlǐ Guó 大理国: Dàlǐ kingdom, successor state to Nánzhào, ruled by the Duàn 段 clan, 937<sup>--1253</sup> - see pages 23, 34, 51

- Dàlǐyì 大礼议: Great Ritual Controversy, conflict over ritual at the beginning of the Míng 明 Jiājìng 嘉靖 period, 1521-1524 see page 48, 51
- Dàlì 大历: reign period of Táng emperor Dàizōng, 766-779 - see page 14, 15
- **Dàmíngyītǒngzhì** 《大明一统志》: 'Great Míng Unified Gazetteer', - see page 51
- Dàtiānxīngguó 大天兴国: great state of Tiānxīng, short-lived Nánzhào successor state, 928, also written as Xīngyuánguó兴 元国 – see page 22, 51
- **Dàxī**大厘: earlier name of present-day Xǐzhōu 喜洲 – see page *see* 史城
- Dà Yìníng Guó 大义宁国: Great State of Yìníng, last of the short-lived successor states of Nánzhào, 929-937 - see page 23, 51
- Dàzhōng Guó 大中国: state of Dàzhōng, short-lived state in the Dàlǐ 大理 region under control of the ?? clan, 1094–1096 – see page 30, 51

Dàizōng 代宗: - see page 14

- Dàn 赕: character used in many place names, apparently indicating a – somewhat smaller – flat area used for cultivation, akin to today's use of 平坝, see Mù Qín 木芹 (1995), p. 3 – see page 13
- Dào 道: dào, key Dàoist concept, often translated as 'the way' – see pages 17, 23, 28, 51
- Déhuà Bēi 德化碑《德化碑》: 'Déhuà Stele', most important Nánzhào stele, detailing the early history – see page 14, 51
- Dèngchuān 邓川: see pages 9, 13, 45
- **Dīmóujū** 低牟苴: mythological ancestor see page 8, 11

- **Díqīng** 狄青: Běisòng 北宋 general see page 29
- **Diān** 滇: one of the earliest polities known to China in present-day Yúnnán, later also a geographical term for the region - see pages 8, 27, 41, 45-48, see 滇国
- Diānchí 滇池: Lake Dian, large lake in the center of Yúnnán, south of present-day Kūnmíng 昆明 – see pages 5, 40, 52
- **Diān Guó** 滇国: kingdom of Diān, historic polity in Yunnan, centered around Diānchí, flourishing at the time of the Hàn dynasty – see page 52
- **Diān Wáng** 滇王: king of Diān, – see page 45, 52
- 《滇载记》: 'Historical Records of Diānzàijì *Diān*', Míng 明 period historical work by Yáng Shèn 杨慎, completed 1525 – see pages 5-8, 47, 52
- Diǎncāng Shān 点苍山: Diǎncāng Mountains, mountain range west of Dàlǐ 大理 - see pages 15, 16, 41, 42, 45, 52
- Dìngxī Líng 定西岭: Dìngxī range, old name for the mountain range between Wēishān 巍山 and Mídù 弥渡 – see page 10, 52
- **Dōngchuān** 东川: eastern part of Jiànnán see page 15, 22
- Dong Hàn 东汉: Eastern Hàn, Chinese dynasty, 25–220 – see page 52
- Dǒng Jiāluō 董迦罗: name mentioned in the 《白国因由》-see page 25
- Dū 都: area command, name of an administrative area – see pages 34, 44, 52
- Dūdū 都督: commander-in-chief, 'chief of mil-(1985), 7311 – see page 14, 52

- Dù Yòu 杜佑: Táng dynasty scholar and politician, 735-812, compiler of the 《通典》-
- Dù Yuányǐng 杜元颖: \*775 †838, Táng dynasty official, served as military commissioner and was blamed for deterioration of relationships with Nánzhào - see page 18
- **Duàn** 段: clan name of the ruling family of Dàlǐ kingdom – see pages 40, 45-47
- **Duàn Sēngnú** 段僧奴: sister of Duàn Bǎo 段 宝 – see page 42
- Duàn Xiángxīng 段祥兴: Dàlǐ kingdom ruler, ruled 1238–1251 CE – see page 24, 33
- Duàn Zhìxīng 段智兴: Dàlí kingdom ruler, ruled 1172–1200 CE – see page 24, 32
- Duàn Bǎo 段宝: Dàlǐ 大理 Zǒngguǎn 总管 see pages 41-45
- Duàn Gōng 段功: Dàlǐ 大理 Zǒngguǎn 总管, his grave mount is in the Three Pagodas  $\equiv$ 塔 complex (@ 25.71N 100.14E) – see pages 38-42
- Duàn Guāng 段光: Dàlǐ 大理 Zǒngguǎn 总管 - see page 36, 37
- Duàn Héyù 段和誉: Dàlǐ kingdom ruler, ruled 1108–1147 CE – see page 24, 31
- Duàn Jiǎnwèi 段位魏: general of Nánzhào, given the name Duàn Zhōngguó 段忠国 by 阁罗凤 - see page 14, 23, see 段忠国
- Duàn Jùn 段俊: 6th Dàlǐ 大理 Zǒngguǎn 总管 - see page 36
- Duàn Liányì 段廉义: twelfth ruler of Dàlǐ kingdom, ruled 1075–1080 CE – see page 24, 29
- itary forces in a prefecture', see Hucker Duàn Lóng 段隆: Dàli 大理 Zǒngguǎn 总管 see page 36

- Duàn Míng 段明: last Dàlǐ 大理 Zǒngguǎn 总管, later changed his name to Duàn Shì 段世, which has led to the confusion in some works that these were two different people, see Liào Déguǎng 廖德广 (2016), pp. 236–239 and Zhāng Xílù 张锡禄 (2015), p. 67 – see page 44, 45
- Duàn Qìng 段庆: Dàlǐ 大理 Zǒngguǎn 总管 see page 35
- Duàn Rén 段仁: son of Duàn Míng 段明 see page 45
- Duàn Shí 段实: Dàlǐ 大理 Zǒngguǎn 总管, also called Duàn Xìnjūrì – see page 35
- Duàn Shì 段世: see Duàn Shì 段世 see page see 段明
- **Duàn Shì** 段氏: Duàn clan, ruling clan of Dàlǐ Guó – see pages 23, 27, 29–31, 34, 37–39, 44, 45, 53
- Duàn Shòuhuī 段寿辉: thirteenth ruler of Dàlǐ kingdom, ruled 1080-1081 CE - see page 24, 29
- Duàn Sīcōng 段思聪: fourth ruler of Dàlǐ kingdom, ruled 951–968 CE – see pages 24, 26, 27
- Duàn Sīlián 段思康: eleventh ruler of Dàlǐ kingdom, ruled 1044–1075 CE – see pages 24, 28, 29
- Duàn Sīliáng 段思良: third ruler of Dàlǐguó 大理国, 899—952, younger brother of Duàn Sīpíng 段思平, ruled 945-951 CE see page 24, 26
- Duàn Sīpíng 段思平: founder of the Dàlǐ kingdom, ruled 937-944 CE - see pages 23-26, 34
- Duàn Sīyīng 段思英: second ruler of the Dàlǐ kingdom, ruled 944-945 CE - see page 24, 25

- Duàn Sùlián 段素廉: seventh ruler of Dàlǐ kingdom, ruled 1009–1022 CE – see pages 24, 27, 28
- **Duàn Sùlóng** 段素隆: eighth ruler of Dàlǐ kingdom, ruled 1022–1026 CE – see page 24, 28
- Duàn Sùshùn 段素顺: fifth ruler of Dàlǐ kingdom, ruled 969-985 CE - see page 24, 27
- Duàn Sùtōng 段素通: see page 24
- Duàn Sùxīng 段素兴: tenth ruler of Dàlǐ kingdom, ruled 1041-1044 CE - see page 24, 28
- Duàn Sùyīng 段素英: sixth ruler of Dàlǐ kingdom, ruled 986-1009 CE - see page 24, 27
- Duàn Sùzhēn 段素真: ninth ruler of Dàlǐ kingdom, ruled 1026–1041 CE – see page 24, 28
- Duàn Xìnjū Fú 段信苴福: prince Duàn Fú, uncle of Duàn Xīngzhì 段兴智, he carried the title The Duke Wǔwēi – see page 23, 53
- Duàn Xīngzhì 段兴智: Dàlǐ kingdom ruler, ruled 1251-1254 CE - see pages 24, 33-35
- Duàn Yì 段义: Dàlǐ 大理 Zǒngguǎn 总管, son of Duàn Míng 段明 see page 36, 45
- **Duàn Zhēn** 段真: uncle of Duàn Bǎo 段宝, sent with a submission letter to the Míng 明 – see page 43
- Duàn Zhèng 段正: Dàlǐ 大理 Zǒngguǎn 总管 - see page 36
- Duàn Zhèngchún 段正淳: Dàlǐ kingdom ruler, ruled 1096–1108 CE – see page 24, 31
- **Duàn Zhèngmíng** 段正明: fourteenth ruler of Dàlǐ kingdom, ruled 1081–1094 CE – see page 24, 29
- Duàn Zhèngxīng 段正兴: Dàlǐ kingdom ruler, ruled 1147-1172 CE - see page 24, 32

- **Duàn Zhèngyán** 段正严: Dàlǐ kingdom ruler, **Gānsù** 甘肃: Chinese province see page ruled 1108–1147 CE, also known as Duàn Héyù 段和誉 - see page see 段和誉
- Duàn Zhìlián 段智廉: Dàlǐ kingdom ruler, ruled 1200–1204 CE – see page 24, 32
- Duàn Zhìsī 段智思: father of Duàn Sīlián 段 思廉 – see page 24
- Duàn Zhìxiáng 段智祥: Dàlǐ kingdom ruler, ruled 1204–1238 CE – see pages 24, 32, 33
- Duàn Zhōng 段忠: Dàlǐ 大理 Zǒngguǎn 总管 – see page 35
- **Duàn Zhōngguó** 段忠国: Nánzhào prime minister, the name Zhōngguó was given to him by 阁罗凤, his original name was Duàn Jiǎnwèi 段位魏 – see page 14, 23, see 段俭魏
- **Ěrhǎi** 洱海: Lake Ěrhǎi, highland lake in western Yúnnán with the center of Nánzhào on its western side. It was also called Xīěr 西洱, Xīěr Hé – see pages 9, 13, 16, 18, 25, 54
- Fǎyáo 法尧: Nánzhào ruler, also known as Lóngshùn 隆舜, 877—897 -
- Fēngyòu 丰佑: Nánzhào ruler see page 17
- Fèngjiāyì 凤伽异: see page 13, 14
- Fóguāng Zhài 佛光寨: Fóguāng stockade, mountain stronghold north of Ěrhǎi, site of resistance against the Míng 明 in 1382 CE, see Lián Ruìzhī 连瑞枝 (2020), pp. 34-38 - see page 45, 54
- fǔ 府: prefecture, administrative unit during the Yuán Cháo 元朝 – see pages 9, 34, 35, 54
- 44, 45

- 23, 33
- Gāo Hé 高禾: member of the Gāo Shì 高氏 see page 33
- Gāohuángdì Yùzhì Wénjí 《高皇帝御制 文集》: 'Imperial Collection of Literary Works', collection of writings under Míng Hóngwǔ 明洪武 – see page 43, 54
- Gāolígòng Shān 高黎贡山: Gāolígòng Mountains, major mountain range on the western side of the Nùjiāng 怒江 – see page 15, 54
- Gāo Liàngchéng 高量成: Dàlǐ kingdom prime minister, mentioned on a stele found in the Chǔxióng 楚雄 region, Wàn Kuíyī 万揆一 (1986) and Ruì Zēngruì 芮增 瑞 (1992) - see page 30
- Gāo Míngliàng 高明量: son of Gāo Tàimíng 高泰明 - see page 30
- Gāo Míngqīng 高明清: son of Gāo Tàimíng 高泰明 – see page 30
- Gāo Míngshùn 高明顺: see page 30
- **Gāopéng** 高蓬: Dàlǐ 大理 official see page 37
- Gāo Pián 高骈: see page 19, 20
- Gāo Shēngtài 高升泰: short-term ruler of Dàzhōng Guó 大中国, ruled 1094–1096 CE - see page 29, 30
- Gāo Shēngxiáng 高升祥: see page 30
- Gāo Shì 高氏: Gāo clan, name of powerful clan in Yúnnán – see pages 30, 31, 39, 45, 54
- Fù Yǒudé 傅友德: Míng 明 general see page Gāo Shòuchāng 高寿昌: Dàlǐ kingdom official – see page 30

- Gāo Shùnzhēn 高顺贞: see page 30
- Gāo Tàilián 高太连: see page 31
- Gāo Tàimíng 高泰明: Dàlǐguó 大理国 prime minister see page 30, 31
- Gāo Tàixiáng 高泰祥: see page 33
- Gāo Tàiyùn 高泰运: see page 30
- Gāoyáo 高峣: location on the western side of Diānchí 滇池 – see page 5
- Gāo Zhēnmíng 高贞明: Dàlǐ kingdom official see page 30
- Gāo Zhēnshòu 高贞寿: Dàlǐ kingdom official - see page 30
- Gāo Zhìshēng 高智升: see page 29, 30
- Gāozōng 高宗: Táng emperor Gāozōng, Táng dynasty emperor, ruling 649-683 - see page 12, 55
- **Gāozǔ** 高祖: founding emperor, temple name for founder of a dynasty – see page 11, 55
- Géluōfèng 阁罗凤: ruler of Nánzhào, ruled 748-779 CE – see pages 13, 14, 23, see 阁 逻凤
- Géluófèng 阁逻凤: ruler of Nánzhào, ruled 748-779 CE -
- **Gōng** 公: duke, '(1) Duke, from high antiquity the highest title of nobility after wang, normally reserved for members of the ruling family; ... Commonly prefixed with territorial names, ... (2) The Honorable or His Honor, polite term of indirect address applied to someone considered deserving of respect', see Hucker (1985), 3388 – see page 55
- **Gǔtiánsì** 古田寺: Gǔtián temple, see page 38, 55

- Guāntān river 关滩江: Guāntān River, see page 38, 55
- Guānyīn 观音: Avalokiteśvara, one of the bodhisattvas, in Chinese also written as Guānshiyīn 观世音, which is a literal translation of the Sanskrit अवलोकितेश्वर. Guānyīn plays a key role in Nánzhào mythology, particularly in the 《南诏图传》 and the 《白国因由》 – see page 55
- Guānghuà 光化: reign period of Táng emperor Zhāozōng, 898-901 - see page 21
- Guǎngdé 广德: reign period of Táng emperor Dàizōng, 763-764 - see page 27
- Guǎnglíngyāoluànzhì 《广陵妖乱志》: *'Chronicle of the Guǎnglíng Rebellion'*, – see page 46, 55
- Guǎngmíng 广明: reign period of Táng Xīzōng 唐僖宗, 880-881 - see page 20
- Guǎngmíng 广明: reign period of Duàn Sùyīng, 986–1004 – see page 27
- Guǎngshùn 广顺: reign period of the 后周 founder, 951–954 see page 26, 27
- Guǎngxī 广西: southern Chinese province see page 29
- Guǎngzhōu 广州: south-eastern region of China – see page 29
- Guīyì 归义: Submitting to Righteousness, honorific of Nánzhào ruler 皮罗阁 – see page 13, 55
- Guīzī 龟兹: Region of northwestern China see page 16
- Guìzhōu 贵州: province in south-west China
- Guō Mòruò 郭沫若: Chinese writer see page 39

- **Guó** 號: state during the Chūnqiū 春秋 period - see page 42
- Hàn Cháo 汉朝: Hàn dynasty, Chinese dynasty, 202 BCE-220 - see pages 10, 46, 47, 56
- Hàn 汉: Hàn, main ethnic group of China, also name of early dynasty – see pages 22, 44, 46–48, 56
- Hàn Wǔdì 汉武帝: Hàn emperor Wǔ, Hàn dynasty emperor Wǔ, 140-87 BCE – see page 44, 56
- Hànyuán 汉源: -
- Hào 号: *sobriquet*, assumed literary name see page 47, 56
- Héluòxíng Niánjì 《河洛行年纪》: 'Annals of the Yellow and Luo River', - see page 46,56
- Hēi Cuàn 黑爨: black Cuàn, clan in eastern Yúnnán, part of the Cuànshì 爨氏 – see page 25, 56
- Hēihuì river 黑惠江: Hēihuì River, river see page 16, 56
- Hóngjīn 红巾: Red Turbans, peasant rebel movement during the latter half of the Yuán Cháo 元朝 – see pages 38, 39, 56
- **Hónglú** 鸿胪: ceremonial minister, 'honorary designation granted to a southwestern aboriginal chief', Hucker (1985), p. 2905 see page 13, 56
- Hóngwǔ 洪武: sole reign period Míng emperor Zhū Yuánzhāng, 1368–1398 – see page 41, 44
- Hóu 侯: marquis, 'Marquis, a title of nobility, usually next in prestige only after Prince (wang) and Duke (kung), sometimes hereditary, sometimes conferred for special merit; usually prefixed with a

geographic name designating the noble's real or hypothetical fief.', see Hucker (1985), 2205 – see page 45, 56

- Hòu Hàn 后汉: later Hàn dynasty, second period of the Hàn dynasty see page 56
- Hòuhàn Shū 《后汉书》: 'History of the Later Hàn Dynasty', classic historical text, one of the twenty-four official histories of China – see page 56
- Hòujìn 后晋: Later Jìn, dynasty during the Wǔdài 五代 period, 936–947 – see pages 25, 26, 56
- Hòujìn Gāozǔ 后晋高祖: Later Jìn emperor Gāozǔ, founding emperor of Hòujìn 后晋, 936-942 – see page 56
- Hòulǐguó 后理国: Later Kingdom of Dàlǐ, see page 31, 56
- Hòushǔ 后蜀: Later Shǔ, short-lived empire in Sìchuān, one of the Five Dynasties and Ten Kingdoms, 934–965 – see page 27, 56
- Hòu Táng 后唐: Later Táng, shortlived dynasty, one of the Five Dynasties and Ten Kingdoms, 923–936 – see page 56
- Hòutáng Míngzōng 后唐明宗: Later Táng emperor Míngzōng, Later Táng emperor, 926–933 – see page 22, 56
- Hòuzhōu 后周: later Zhōu, 951–960, the last in a succession of five short-lived dynasties that controlled northern China after the Táng dynasty – see page 26, 56
- Hūbìliè 忽必烈: Kublai Khan, Mongol leader who conquered Dàlǐ 大理 in 1253 – see pages 33, 37, 56
- hǔfú 虎符: tiger tally, a sign of authority given by the emperor in the shape of a tiger. The Yuánshǐ 元史 lists various levels of such

tallies, see Zhāng Xílù 张锡禄 (2015), p. 44 – see page 35, 56

- Huídèng pass 回磴关: Huídèng pass, see page 38, 57
- Huìchāng 会昌: reign period of Táng Wǔzōng 唐武宗, 841-846 - see page 18
- Huìchénggōngzhǔ 会城公主: princess Huìchéng, – see page 22, 57

Huìchuān 会川: – see page 35, 43

- Huǒbǎjié 火把节: torch festival, traditional festivity of the Bái Zú 白族 and ?? – see page 13, 57
- Jìgǔdiānshuō Yuánjí 《纪古滇说原集》 : 'Collected Stories from the Annals of Ancient Diān', 1265 compendium by Yúnnán scholar Zhāng Dàozōng张道宗 – see page 23, 57
- Jiājìng 嘉靖: emperor Jiājìng, Míng 明 emperor, 1521–1566 – see page 49, 57
- Jiāxī 嘉熙: reign period of Sòng Lǐzōng 宋理宗, 1237-1240 - see page 33
- Jiāzhōu 嘉州: a district in present-day southern Sìchuān, east of Lèshān 乐山 (● 29.6N 103.78E) – see page 19
- Jiānwèi 犍为: see page 19
- Jiànchāng 建昌: administrative region in present-day Sìchuān, south of the Dàdù Hé 大渡河. It was set up first by Nánzhào in the 9th century, in 1275 divided and in 1383 again set up see pages 9, 35, 42

Jiànchuān 剑川: - see page 22

- Jiànjí 建极: reign period of 世隆, 860-877 see page 20
- Jiànlóng 建隆: reign period of Sòng Tàizǔ 朱 太祖, 960-963 - see page 27

- Jiànlóng 见龙: reign period of Yìmóuxún, 779- - see page 17
- Jiànnán 剑南: Táng dynasty commandery in present-day Sìchuān see page 13, 14
- Jiànníng 建宁: an early administrative district in present-day eastern Yúnnán – see page 47
- Jiànníng Guó 建宁国: state of Jiànníng, see page 11, 57
- Jiànxīng 建兴: first reign period of Shǔ Hàn 蜀 汉 emperor Liú Shàn 刘禅, 223–237 – see page 10, see 刘禅
- Jiànyuán 谏垣: censorate, 'unofficial reference', see Hucker (1985), 881 – see page 48, 57
- Jiāng 将: commander, a generic term for some in charge – see page 40, 57
- Jiāngjūn 将军: general, 'throughout history the most common term for the commander of a substantial body of troops, whether a regular officer of the standing army or the ad hoc commander of a special force organized for a campaign; occurs with many kinds of prefixes', see Hucker (1985), 694 – see page 36, 57
- Jiāng Lóng 姜龙: Míng 明 official, sobriquet Mèngbīn 梦宾 – see pages 8, 47-49
- Jiāngwěi 江尾: locality around Ěrhǎi see page 25
- Jiāozhǐ 交趾: region of the south-western coast of China, stretching into presentday Vietnam (● 21.03N 105.85E) – see page 16, 19
- Jiédù Shǐ 节度使: military commissioner, 'a military title of great historical importance' 'during much of the late T'ang

gional governors', see Hucker (1985), 777 see pages 13, 14, 16, 18, 19, 22, 23, 57, 58

- Jīnchǐ 金齿: Golden Teeth, name given to the area of present-day Bǎoshān, because it was the tribal area of the Jīnchǐmán 金齿 蛮 - see pages 8, 35, 58, see 金齿蛮
- Jīnchǐ Mán 金齿蛮: Golden Teeth, tribal group, the name translates as 'golden teeth' – see page 58
- **Jīnlíng** 金陵: present-day Nánjīng 南京, under the Southern Sòng ?? - see page 43, 45
- Jīnmǎ 金马: golden horse, mythological animal in Yúnnán – see page 39, 58
- Jīnmǎ mountain 金马: Golden Horse Mountain, landmark mountain in the Diānchí 滇池 region, translates as 'golden horse mountain' – see page 42, 58
- Jīnshā river 金沙江: Jīnshā River, upstream part of the Chángjiāng 长江, separating Yúnnán and Sìchuān – see page 33, 58
- **Jìn** 晋: Chinese dynasty see page 42, 47
- Jǐng jìngsì 景净寺: Jǐngjìng temple, - see page 20, 58
- Jǐngtài 景泰: Míng 明 emperor –
- **Jǐngyún** 景云: reign period of Táng Ruìzōng 唐 睿宗, 710-711 - see page 12
- **Jǐngzhuāng Huángdì** 景庄皇帝: emperor Jingzhuāng, posthumous name of 世隆 – see page 20, 58
- **Jìngwáng** 靖王: king Jìng, posthumous title of Quànlìshèng 劝利晟 – see page 17, 58, see 劝利晟
- Jiǔlóng 九隆: mytholical son of a dragon and Shāyī 沙壹 in the 《哀牢传》 – see pages 8, 10, 11

- period they were virtually autonomous re- Jiǔzhōu 九州: nine divisions, a classic term for China as the country was thought to be made up of nine parts - see page 58
  - Jūn 君: lord, 'Throughout history a broad generic term for rulers and other official superiors: Lord, often used in contrast to Minister (ch'en)', see Hucker (1985), 1729 - see page 43, 58
  - Jùn 郡: commandery, historic administrative area, term in use before the Táng, 'a standard unit of territorial administration normally incorporating and coordinating several Districts (hsien)', see Hucker (1985), 1731 – see pages 10, 23, 35, 46, 47, 58
  - Kāixī 开信: reign period of ??, 1205-1207 see page 33
  - Kāiyuán 开元: 713-741 BCE, second reign period of Táng Xuánzōng 唐玄宗 - see page 13
  - Kāiyùn 开运: reign period of Chūdì 出帝, 944-947 - see page 26
  - Kǒngquè Dǎn《孔雀胆》: 'Peacock's Gallbladder', 1940s play by Guō Mòruò 郭沫若 see page 39, 58
  - **Kǒngzǐ** 孔子: Confucius, see pages 12, 47, 58
  - Kūnlún 昆仑: a term for diverse people of south-east Asia, possibly sea-farers, see Coedès (1975), p. 9 – see page 15
  - Kūnlúnguó 昆仑国: state of Kūnlún, term for diverse people of south-east Asia, possibly sea-farers, see Coedès (1975), p. 9 - see page 31, 58, see 昆仑
  - Kūnmíguó 昆弥国: state of Kūnmí, - see pages 10, 11, 58
  - Kūnmíng 昆明: Salt producing area of presentday 盐源 – see page 6, 42

- Kūnmíng 昆明市: Kūnmíng, present-day cap- Liǎnglín 两林: in Sìchuān Liángshān 凉山, ital of Yúnnán, founded as second capital of Nánzhào - see page 59, see 拓东
- Láncāng river 澜沧江: Láncāng River, major river in Yúnnán, the Mekong – see page 16, 59
- Làngqióng 浪穹: one of the five Zhào see page 9
- **Lèshān** 乐山: district in southern Sìchuān –
- Lízhōu 黎州: present-day Sìchuān Hànyuán 汉 源, on the northern side of the Dàdù Hé 大渡河 (@ 29.35N 102.64E) - see pages 19, 20, 22
- Lǐ Déyù 李德裕: Táng dynasty Jiédùshǐ and prime minister - see page 18
- Lǐ Guīnián 李龟年: Táng official see page 20
- Lǐ Jīng 李京: historian during the Yuán Cháo 元朝 -
- Lǐ Mì 李宓: Táng dynasty general, also written as Lǐmì 李宓 – see page 14
- Lǐ Shèng 李晟: 李晟??, Táng dynasty general - see page 15, 59
- Lǐ Shìmín 李世民: name of Táng emperor Tàizōng -
- Lǐ Zhīgǔ 李知古: Táng censor see page 12
- Lìjiāng 丽 江: present-day city in northwestern Yunnan - see pages 9, 15, 16
- Liángshān 凉山: -
- Liángwáng 梁王: Prince Liáng, – see pages 37-42, 44, 59

Liángzhōu 梁州: a district set up by Cáo Wèi 曹魏 in 264 in the present-day Sìchuān region, the eighth of the legendary Jiǔzhōu 九州 mentioned in the 《禹贡》-

- present-day Pǔxióng 普雄, Fāng Guóyú 方 国瑜 (1987), p. 617 (@ 28.5N 102.65E) - see page 35
- Líntáo 临洮: region in Gānsù 甘肃 see page 33
- Língwài Dàidá《岭外代答》: 'Língwài Dàidá', Sòng dynasty geographical work, written by Zhōu Qùfēi 周去非 in 1178 – see page 59
- Liú Bèi 刘备: founder of the Shù Hàn 蜀汉 dynasty, 161–223 – see page 47
- Liúhòu 留后: caretaker, 'lit., an agent left behind, a deputy. (1) T'ANG-SUNG: Capital Liaison Representative, an agent in the dynastic capital charged with maintaining communication between the central government and his superior in a territorial base, such as a Prince or Military Commissioner (chieh-tu shih)', Hucker (1985), p. 3790 – see page 14, 59
- Liú Shàn 刘禅: second ruler of Shǔ Hàn 蜀汉, 207-271 -
- Liù zhào 六诏: six zhào, Chinese term for the six Zhào that were united in Nánzhào, but this was not term Nánzhào used itself see pages 9, 12, 59
- Lóngchuān 龙川: a river in western Yúnnán see page 15
- Lónggiè 龙怯: a region somewhere north of Dàlǐ 大理, an administrative district of Nánzhào and also a river – see page 13
- Lóngshǒu pass 龙首关: Dragon Head Gate, fortification at the northern end of the western side of Ěrhǎi (@ 25.93N 100.1E) see page 13, 59

- Lóngshùn 隆舜: Nánzhào ruler, also known as Fǎyáo 法尧, ruled 877–897 CE – see page 20
- Lóngwěi 龙尾: see page 13
- Lóngwěi pass 龙尾关: Dragon Tail Gate, historic fortification at the southern end of Ěrhǎi – see page 25, 60
- Lóngxīng 龙兴: reign period of Nánzhào ruler Quànlóngshèng, 810-816 - see page 17
- Lóngxīng 龙兴: reign period of Duàn Zhèngxīng 段正兴 – see page 32
- Lóng Yòunà 龙佑那: see page 10, 11
- Lóngyú Shān 龙于山: mount Lóngyú, early Nánzhào period location mentioned in the《南诏图传》, its relics have been excavated the hills north-west of Wēishān 巍山. On the 《南诏图传》 the name appears written as < []]山尢 > 岈山, but 🛛 岈山 appears (in old style characters) in the 《南 诏野史》. In the 《明一统志》 第八十 六卷, it is written as Lóngyǔtú Shān 龍宇 圖山. Lóngyúshān 龙于山 is the modern accepted simplified form, see Hé Jīnlóng 何金龙 (2015), but IYútúshān is also used, see Dǒng Ài 董艾 (2019). The meaning of the name is unclear, Hé Jīnlóng 何金龙 (2015) argues that it was a deliberate invention of characters to evade taboos and that the term signifies Lóngyú 龙舆, i.e. 'dragon's carriage'. For a recent dating of some of the finds, see Zhāng Nǎiwēn 张 乃温 (2022) (● 25.34N 100.21E) - see page 11,60
- Lùjiāng 潞江: Lùjiāng, historic name for the Nùjiāng 怒江 – see page 16, 60
- Lù Jùnmíng 陆浚明: see page 48
- Lùquàn 禄劝: county in Yúnnán see page 15

- Luōshèng 罗晟: see page 12
- Mán 蛮: historically a generic term for non-Chinese people in the southwest – see pages 12, 16, 18, 34
- Méng 蒙: clan name of the ruling family of Nánzhào – see pages 25, 45–48
- Ménggǔ 蒙古: Mongol, see page 60
- Ménggǔ Shìzǔ 蒙古世祖: Kublai Khan, Ménggǔ蒙古 ruler, 1260–1294 – see page 60
- Ménggǔ Shìzǔ Hūbìliè 蒙古世祖忽必烈: Kublai Khan, - see page 34,60
- Ménggǔxiànzōng 蒙古宪宗: Möngke Khan, - see page 33, 60
- Ménghuà 蒙化: historic name for present-day Wēishān 巍山 – see pages 9, 11, 38
- Méngshè 蒙舍: one of the five Zhào, in the present-day basin of Wēishān 巍山, excavations believed to be the settlement of the Méng蒙 clan have been made south of the present county town ⊕, see Tián Huáiqīng 田怀清 (2011) see page 9, 13
- Méng Shì 蒙氏: Méng clan, ruling clan of Nánzhào – see pages 11, 14, 21, 23, 44, 45, 60
- Méngxī Zhào 蒙巂诏: Méngxī zhào, one of the ?? – see page 9, 60
- Mèngbīn 梦宾: sobriquet of Jiāng Lóng 姜龙 see page 47, 49
- Mídù 弥渡: valley south of Ěrhǎi –
- Miǎndiàn 缅甸: Miǎndiàn, present-day Burma, the lowlands west of Yúnnán – see page 35, 60
- Mínjiāng 岷江: Mín River, most important tributary to the Chángjiāng 长江, west of 成都 – see page 60

- asty, 1368–1644 see pages 5, 44, 61
- **Míng** 明: Míng, usually referring to the Míng 明 - see page 45, 61
- Hóngwǔ 明洪武: Míng emperor Hóngwǔ, sole reign period of Míng emperor Zhū Yuánzhāng 朱元璋, 1368–1398 – see page 43, 61
- Míngdé 明德: reign period of Duàn Sīcōng 段 思聪, 953- - see page 27
- **Míngshèng** 明圣: reign period of Duàn Sùyīng - see page 27
- Míngtōng 明通: reign period of Duàn Sùlóng 段素隆 - see page 28
- Míng Xià 明夏: Míng Xià dynasty, short-lived dynasty in Sìchuān, 1363–1371, see Fölster (2009) - see page 38, 61
- Míngyītǒngzhì 《明一统志》: 'Ming Unified Gazetteer', Míng 明 geographic work, published 1461 – see page 61
- **Míngyìng** 明应: reign period of Duàn Sùyīng - see page 27
- Míng Yùzhēn 明玉珍: peasant rebel leader who established the Míng Xià 明夏 – see pages 38, 39, 41
- Míngzhì 明治: reign period of Duàn Sùyīng see page 27
- **Móhēluōcuó** 摩诃罗嵯: *mahārāja*, title of Lóngshùn 隆舜: 'Mahā was certainly the ruler known by the Indian title Mahārāja, the next-to-last monarch of Nan Chao (r. 877-897)', Soper and Chapin (1970), p. 15, also used in a short form Móhē 摩诃. This title was also later given to members of the Duàn clan see = 隆舜 – see page 34, 61

- Míng Cháo 明朝: Míng dynasty, Chinese dyn- Móxiē Zhào 磨些诏: one of the six Zhào see page 9
  - Mùshìtúpǔ《木氏图谱》: 'Mù Clan Illustrated *Genealogy*', – see page 5, 61
  - Mù Yīng 沐英: see page 44, 45
  - Nánhàn 南汉: Southern Hàn, one of the ??, 917-971 - see pages 21, 22, 61
  - Nánjīng 南京: Chinese city, Míng Hóngwǔ 明洪武 made it the capital of China in 1368 – see page 43, 45
  - Nánníng 南宁: city in present-day Guǎngxī 广 西 \_
  - Nánsòng 南宋: Southern Sòng, Chinese dynasty, 1127–1279 – see page 61
  - Nánsòng Gāozōng 南宋高宗: Southern Sòng emperor Gāozōng, Southern Sòng emperor, 1127–1162 – see page 61
  - Nánsòng Níngzōng 南宋宁宗: Southern Sòng emperor Níngzōng, Southern Sòng emperor Níngzōng, 1194-1224 - see pages 32, 33, 61
  - Nánsòng Xiàozōng 南宋孝宗: Southern Sòng emperor Xiàozōng, Southern Sòng emperor, 1162-1189 - see page 32, 61
  - Nánxī 南溪: Táng dynasty administrative region, also called -
  - Nán Yí 南夷: southern Yí, general term for non-Chinese people south of China - see page 61
  - Nánzhào 南诏: southern zhào, regional power with its center on Ěrhǎi during the 8th and 9th centuries - see pages 9, 11, 13-21, 27, 48, 61

- Nánzhào Túzhuān 《南诏图传》: 'Illustrated History of Nánzhào', important picture scroll dating back to 898, telling the story of the arrival of Buddhism and the divine appointment of the rulers of Nánzhào – see pages 11, 26, 62
- Nánzhào Yěshǐ 《南诏野史》: 'Unoffical History of Nánzhào', import Míng 明 dynasty recreation of the history of Nánzhào – see pages 5, 41, 62
- Nóng Zhìgāo 依智高: tribal leader in Guǎngxī 广西 during the Sòng dynasty, led a rebellion, was defeated in 1054 and fled to the Dàlǐ kingdom, see Anderson (2007) and also Barlow (1987), pp. 254-258 – see page 29
- Nòngdòng 弄栋: present-day Yáoān 姚安 -
- Nùjiāng 怒江: Nù River, major river in western Yunnan, the Salween – see page 62
- Ōuyáng Xiū 欧阳修: Sòng dynasty historian
- Píluōgé 皮罗阁: fourth ruler of Nánzhào, ruled 728-748 CE - see page 12, 13
- **Piàoguó** 骠国: state of Pyu, region of presentday central Burma – see page 16, 62
- **Pǐndiàn** 品甸: region to the east of Dàlǐ 大理 on the present-day Xiángyún 祥云 plain – see page 25, see 品甸海
- **Pǐndiànhǎi** 品甸海: lake in northern part of present-day Xiángyún 祥云 –
- Píngzhāng 平章: administrator, , see Hucker (1985), 4699 – see pages 39–42, 62
- Pǔxióng 普雄: township in Sìchuān Liángshān 凉山 (● 28.5N 102.65E) –
- Pǔ Yánnóng 普颜秾: rebel leader see page 45

- 《南诏图传》: '*Illus* **Qīxīng pass** 七星关: Qīxīng pass, see pages *nzhào*', important pic- 39, 45, 62
  - Qíjiā Wáng 奇嘉王: king Qíjiā, posthumous name of 细奴逻, the founder of Nánzhào – see page 62, see 细奴逻 & 奇王
  - Qí Wáng 奇王: king Qí, posthumous name of 细奴逻, the founder of Nánzhào – see page 11, 62, see 细奴逻 & 奇嘉王
  - Qiándào 乾道: reign period of Nánsòng Xiàozōng 南宋孝宗, 1165-1173 – see page 32
  - Qiánshǔ 前蜀: Former Shù, one of the ??, 907-925 - see page 62
  - Qiánxīng 乾兴: reign period of Sòng Zhēnzōng 宋真宗, 1022 – see page 28
  - Qiánfú 乾符: reign period of Táng Xīzōng 唐僖 宗, 874-879 - see page 20
  - Qiánníng 乾宁: reign period of Táng emperor Zhāozōng, 894-898 - see page 21
  - Qín 秦: see page 47
  - Qín Cháo 秦朝: Qín dynasty, see page 62
  - Qínxiāngwáng 秦襄王: king Xiāng of Qín, Qín秦 king – see page 47, 62
  - **Qīng dynasty** 清朝: Qīng dynasty, last dynasty of imperial China, 1644–1912 BCE – see page 5, 62
  - **qīngpíngguān** 清平官: prime minister, Nánzhào highest government official, akin to prime minister – see pages 14, 21–23, 62
  - Qīngxī pass 清溪关: Qīngxī pass, strategic pass on the route from Nánzhào to Chengdu – see page 18, 62
  - Qìnglì 庆历: reign period of Sòngrénzōng 宋仁 宗, 1041-1048 - see page 28, 29

- Qìngyuán 庆元: reign period of ??, 1195-1200 - see page 32
- Qiónglái pass 邛崃关: director, strategic pass in 雅州 – see page 20, 63
- Qióngzhōu 邛州: region in Sìchuān see page 18
- Qiúlóng 酋龙: Chinese writing for the Nánzhào ruler 世隆 –
- Qūjìng 曲靖: see page 35
- Quányì 全义: reign period of Nánzhào ruler Quànlìshèng 劝利晟, 816–819 – see page 17
- Quànfēngyòu 劝丰佑: Nánzhào ruler, ruled 823-859 CE - see page 18
- Quànlìshèng 劝利晟: Nánzhào ruler, ruled 816-823 CE - see page 17
- Quànlóngshèng 劝龙晟: ruler of Nánzhào 809-816 – see page 17
- Réndé 仁德: see page 35
- **Rénguǒ** 仁果: see page 10
- **Rìdōngwáng**日东王: King of the Eastern Sun, honoray title for Nánzhào rulers when the submitted to 吐蕃 – see page 15, 63
- Róngzhōu 戎州: historic administrative district, present-day Yíbīn 宜宾, prefecture in north-eastern Yúnnán, established in 649 as ??, in 652 it became 戎州, in 742 it became 南溪, then in 758 it became 戎州 again before being disbanded in 907 (@ 28.77N 104.63E) – see page 18
- Sān Guó 三国: Three Kingdoms, period after the Dōng Hàn 东汉, with three powers dominating China, 220–280 – see page 63

- Sānguó Zhì《三国志》: 'Records of the Three Kingdoms', official history of Wèi 魏, Shǔ and Wú 吳 – see page 10, 63
- Sānhuáng Miào 三皇庙: Three Emperor temple, 'the Three Sovereigns of Chinese tradition are usually considered to be the mythical emperors of antiquity. However, the list of the three varies in different sources. As Daoists appropriated the belief in the Three Sovereigns they became identified with the Sovereigns of Heaven, Earth, and Humanity.', Littlejohn (2020), p. 186 – see page 15, 63
- Sānshíqībù 三十七部: thirty-seven tribes, often referred to groups in eastern Yúnnán - see page 25, 63
- Sāntǎ 三塔: Three Pagodas, temple complex north of Dàlǐ 大理 called Chóngshèng Sì 崇圣寺 – see page 63, see 崇圣寺
- Shāyī 沙壹: legendary ancestor in Āiláo see page 8
- Shāzhuī 沙追: a salt-producing region see page 13
- Shànchǎn 善阐: another name for Tuòdōng 拓东 (⊕ 25.05N 102.7E) – see pages 16, 33, 35, 37, 39, 41, 43, 44, see 拓东
- **Shāngcháo** 商朝: Shāng Dynasty, second Chinese dynasty, ca. 1600–1046 – see page 46, 63
- Shàngguān 上关: gate at the northern end of the Dàlǐ 大理 plain see page 13
- Shàngyuán 上元: reign period of Táng emperor Gāozōng, 674-676 - see page 12, 17
- Shǎoqīng 少卿: vice minister, 'Vice Minister, common title for 2nd tier executive officials of central government agencies headed by Chief Ministers', see Hucker (1985), 5091 see pages 13, 20, 63

- Shàoxīng 绍兴: reign period of Nánsòng Gāozōng 南宋高宗, 1131–1162 – see page 32
- Shéncè army 神策军: army of inspired strategy, one of Táng dynasty imperial armies – see page 15, 64
- Shénchuān 神川: region north of Erhai see page 16
- Shénnóng 神农: Holy Farmer, legendary founder of Chinese agriculture – see page 46, 64
- Shēngān 升庵: temple name of Yáng Shèn 杨 慎 – see page 5
- Shēngān Zānhuā Tú 《升庵簪花图》 : 'Shēngān Wearing Flowers in His Hair', painting of Shēngān 升庵 by Chén Hóngshòu 陈洪绶 – see page 5, 64
- Shèngluópí 盛逻皮: ruler of Nánzhào, \*673-†728, ruled 712-728 CE - see page 12
- Shèngmíng 盛明: reign period of Duàn Zhèngxīng 段正兴 – see page 32
- Shīlàng 施浪: north of Erhai see page 9
- Shī Xiù 施秀: see page 40
- Shī Zōng 施宗: see page 40
- Shíchéng 石城: see page 35
- Shígǔ 石鼓: see page 13
- Shǐchéng 史城: ancient name of present-day Xǐzhōu 喜洲 – see page 15, see 大厘
- Shǐjì《史记》: 'Records of the Historian', see page 64
- Shǐlà 矢刺: see page 41
- Shǐyuán 始元: reign period of Zhèng Rénmín 郑仁旻, 910- – see page 22, see 郑仁旻

- **Shì** 氏: clan, term for group sharing the same surname see page 64
- Shìlóng 世隆: Nánzhào ruler, \*844,  $\Psi$ 859, +877 – see pages 18–20
- Shìzōng 世宗: frequently used temple name for deceased emperors see page 12
- Shǔ 蜀: name of a state during the Warring States period, later used to refer to the western part of present-day Sìchuān – see pages 16, 18, 21, 22, 27, 38, 39, 48
- Shǔ Guó 蜀国: state of Shǔ, one of the states of the Sān Guó 三国, later also used as a term for present-day Sìchuān – see page 64
- Shǔ Hàn 蜀汉: Shǔ Hàn, westernmost of the three kingdoms during the Sān Guó 三国 period, 221–263 – see pages 10, 47, 64
- Shǔjùn 蜀郡: Shǔ commandery, historical administrative unit in present-day Sìchuān, its name multiple times changing to Yìzhōu – see page 64
- shuǎng 爽: shuǎng, local term for a province – see page 16, 64
- Shùnhuàzhēn 舜化贞: last ruler of Nánzhào, 897-902 - see page 21
- Shùn Huángdì 顺皇帝: Toghon Temür, last Yuán元 emperor, 1333–1368 – see page 64
- **Sīmǎ** 司马: adjutant, hucker 5713 see pages 46, 47, 64
- Sīmǎ lake 司马池: father of Sīmǎ Guāng 司马 光 - see page 46, 47
- Sīmǎ Guāng 司马光: Sòng dynasty scholar, wrote the 《资治通鉴》 – see page 46, 47
- Sīmă Qiān 司马迁: Hàn dynasty historian, author of the 《史记》 – see page 45
- Sìchuān 四川: Chinese province see page 38

- Sìkùquánshū《四庫全书》: 'Complete Library Sòng Zhēnzōng 宋真宗: Sòng emperor of the Four Treasuries', Qing dynasty library collection – see page 5, 65
- Sòng Cháo 宋朝: Sòng dynasty, Chinese dyn- Tàihé 太和: the Tàihé reign of Táng dynasty asty, 960–1279 – see page 65
- Sōng Cuàn 松爨: see page 25
- Songmínglóu 松明楼: Songmíng tower, legendary building where Píluōgé killed the other five Zhao – see pages 12, 13, 65
- Songwài 松外: see page 15
- Songzhou 松州: see page 16
- **Sòng** 宋: Sòng, Chinese dynasty see pages 28, 29, 31, 33, 44, 46, 65
- Sòng Shénzōng 宋神宗: Sòng emperor Shénzōng, Sòng emperor Shénzōng, 1067-1085 - see page 65
- Sòng Gāozōng 宋高宗: Sòng emperor Gāozōng, Sòng dynasty emperor, ruling 1127-1162 - see page 32, 65
- Sòng Huīzōng 宋徽宗: Sòng emperor Huīzōng, Sòng emperor, 1100–1125 – see page 31, 65
- Sòng Lǐzōng 宋理宗: Sòng emperor Lǐzōng, Sòng emperor, ruled 1224–1264 CE – see page 33, 65
- Sòngrénzōng 宋仁宗: Sòng emperor Rénzōng, Sòng emperor, 1022–1063 – see page 28, 65
- Sòng Tàizǔ 宋太祖: Sòng emperor Tàizǔ, Second Sòng emperor, ruled 976-997 see page 27, 65

## Sòng Zhézōng 宋哲宗: Sòng dynasty em- Táng peror Zhézōng, Sòng dynasty emperor, 1085-1100 - see page 30, 65

- Zhēnzōng, Sòng emperor, 997-1022 see page 28, 65
- emperor Wénzōng, reign period of Táng dynasty emperor Wénzōng, 827-835 - see page 18, 65
- Tàihé 太和: first capital of Nánzhào see page 13

Tàishí 太石: - see page 16

- Tàishǒu 太守: grand protector, 'a title commonly awarded chieftains of southern and southwestern aboriginal tribes'. Herman (2009) translates it as 'governor', noting that it was a title given to members of the indigenous local elite, see Hucker (1985), 1985 – see page 14, 65
- Tàizǔ 太祖: designation for the founding emperor of a dynasty – see page 25, 45
- Táng Cháo 唐朝: Táng dynasty, Chinese dynasty, 618-907 - see page 9, 65
- Táng 唐: Táng, Chinese dynasty contemporary with Nánzhào, 618-907 - see pages 11-16, 21, 27, 44, 47, 65
- Táng Dàizōng 唐代宗: Táng emperor Dàizōng, Táng emperor, 762-779 - see page 15, 65
- Táng Xīzōng 唐僖宗: Táng emperor Xīzōng, Táng dynasty emperor, 873-888 - see page 20, 65
- Táng Dézōng 唐德宗: Táng emperor Dézōng, Táng dynasty emperor, ruled 780-805 CE - see pages 16, 17, 65
- Gāozōng 唐高宗: Táng emperor Gāozōng, Táng dynasty emperor, ruling 649-683 - see page 11, 65

- Táng Mùzōng 唐穆宗: Táng emperor Mùzōng, Táng dynasty emperor, ruled 821–824 CE – see page 18, 66
- Táng Ruìzōng 唐 睿 宗: Táng emperor Ruìzōng, Táng emperor – see page 12, 66
- Tángtàizōng 唐太宗: Táng emperor Tàizōng, Second Táng dynasty emperor Lǐ Shìmín 李世民, ruled 626–649 – see page 66
- Táng Wénzōng 唐文宗: Táng dynasty emperor Wénzōng, Táng dynasty emperor, 809-840 - see page 18, 66
- Táng Wǔzōng 唐武宗: Táng emperor Wǔzōng, Táng emperor, ruled 841–846 CE – see page 18, 66
- Táng Xiànzōng 唐宪宗: Táng emperor Xiànzōng, Táng emperor, ruled 806–820 CE – see page 17, 66
- Táng Xuánzōng 唐玄宗: Táng dynasty emperor Xuánzōng, Táng dynasty emperor, 712-756 – see page 13, 66

## Tángyáo 唐尧: -

- Tángyú 唐虞: Tángyáo and Yúshùn, short form for Tángyáo and Yúshùn, same as Yáoshùn 尧舜 – see page 47, 66
- Táng Zhāozōng 唐昭宗: Táng emperor Zhāozōng, Táng dynasty emperor – see page 21, 66
- **Téngchōng** 腾冲: important present-day city in western Yunnan, west of the Gāolígòngshān 高黎贡山 – see page 15
- Téngyuè 腾越: see page 15, 35
- **Tiānbǎo** 天宝: 742-756 BCE, last reign period of Táng dynasty emperor 玄宗 – see page 13, 14

- Tiānchéng 天成: first reign period of Hòutáng Míngzōng 后唐明宗, 926–930 – see page 22
- **Tiāndìng** 天定: reign period of Duàn Xīngzhì 段兴智 – see page 33
- Tiānfú 天福: reign period of Hòujìn Gāozǔ 后 晋高祖, 936-944 - see page 25
- Tiānfù 天復: reign period of Táng emperor Zhāozōng, 901–904 – see page 21
- *tiān gǒu* 天狗: meteor, literally meaning 'heavenly dog', Soothill and Hodous (2014) – see page 37, 66
- Tiānqǐ 天启: reign period of Nánzhào ruler 寻 阁劝, 840-859 CE - see page 18
- **Tiānshèng** 天圣: reign period of Sòngrénzōng 宋仁宗, 1023-1032 - see page 28
- **Tiānxǐ** 天禧: reign period of Sòng Zhēnzōng 朱 真宗, 1017-1021 - see page 28
- Tiānyìng 天应: reign period of Zhèng Lóngdǎn 郑隆亶, 927-928 – see page 22, see 郑隆亶
- **Tiānzhú** 天竺: India, Ancient name for India – see page 66, see 身毒
- **Tiěmù Dehǎn** 铁木的罕: unclear name, Temür Khan? – see page 41
- **Tiěqiáo** 铁桥: iron bridge, a strategic crossing of the Jinshajiang, on the route to Tibet – see page 16, 66
- Tiě Wànhù 铁万户: see page 38
- Tōngdiǎn 《通典》: 'Comprehensive Statues', 801 work by Dù Yòu 杜佑 – see page 66
- **Tōnghǎi** 通海: present-day 通海, an important town on the route to the coast – see page 23

**Tōngjì Qiáo** 通济桥: Tōngjì bridge, – see page 40, 67

- **Tǔbō** 吐蕃: Tibetan empire see pages 12–16
- *tuō* 托: a Nánzhào title see page 16
- Tuòdōng 拓东: eastern capital of Nánzhào -
- **wáng**  $\pm$ : king, 'King, title commonly used in reference to rulers of foreign states and alien peoples'. It is important to note that this does not have the meaning of a ruler equal to the Chinese emperor, it is a designation of a ruler below him, when used in titles confered by China, the ruler of a vassal state, see Hucker (1985), 7634 – see pages 9, 16, 25, 37, 67
- Wáng Cuódiān 王嵯颠: ??-859, Nánzhào military commissioner of Nòngdòng. Also written as 王苴颠, 蒙嵯颠, 王嵯巅, 王 鹾颠 – see page 17, 18
- Wáng Jiàn 王建: founder of the Qiánshǔ 前 蜀, see Wang (2011) – see page 21, 22
- Wáng Quánbīn 王全斌: general, defeated the Later Shǔ in 964 – see page 27
- Wēibǎoshān 魏宝山: Wēibǎo mountain, holy mountain in today's Wēishān 魏山 – see page 67
- Wēichéng Wáng 威成王: king Wēichéng, posthumous name of 盛逻皮 – see page 12, 67, see 盛逻皮
- Wēichǔ 威楚: see page 38
- Wēishān 巍山: mount Wēi, mountain south of Ěrhǎi, in the historic context probably not what is called Wēibǎoshān 魏宝山 – see pages 9, 11, 67
- Wēizhōu 巍州: name of a nominal fiefdom around Wēishān 巍山 see page 11

- Wéi Gāo 韦皋: Táng dynasty general and military commissioner of 西川, 745-805, see https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wei\_Gao see pages 16, 18, 67
- Wèi ⊥: guard, 'N-S DIV-MING: Guard, standard term for a large military organization normally in garrison but available for active defense duty', see Hucker (1985), 7658 – see page 45, 67
- Wèi 魏: one of the states of the Sān Guó 三国
- Wéndé 文德: reign period of Duàn Sīpíng 段 思平 – see page 25
- Wénwǔ Huángdì 文武皇帝: Wénwǔ emperor, a name for Duànsīpíng 段思平? – see page 26, 67
- Wūqián 巫黔: ancient county in the region of ??, established during the Zhànguó 战国 period – see page 16
- Wú 吳: one of the states of the Sān Guó 三国 –
- Wúliàng Shān 无量山: Wúliàng Mountains, mountain range south of Dàlǐ 大理 – see page 15, 67
- Wǔdài 五代: Five Dynasties, period of five short-lived dynasties after the fall of the Táng dynasty, 907–960 – see page 67
- Wǔdài Shíguó 五代十国: 'Five Dynasties and Ten Kingdoms', period after the collapse of the Táng when China disintegrated in multiple states, 907–960, a term coined by Ōuyáng Xiū 欧阳修 – see page 67
- Wǔdìng 武定: see page 35
- Wǔ Hóu 武侯: Marquis of Wǔ, title of Zhūgéliàng 诸葛亮 – see page 10, 67, see 诸葛亮

- Wǔhuá Lóu 五华楼: Wǔhuá tower, import-Xīníng 熙宁: reign period of Sòng emperor ant ceremonial building in Dàlǐ 大理 – see page 34, 68
- Wǔwēi 武威: see page 23
- Wǔwēi Gōng 武威公: The Duke Wǔwēi, title given to the Duàn clan, see Yúnnán Tújīng Zhìshū 云南图经志书 – see page 23,68
- Wůxuānhuángdì 武 宣 皇 帝: emperor Wůxuān, - see page 20, 68
- Wǔyuèsìdú 五岳四渎: five peaks and four rivers, - see page 15, 68
- Xīchāng 西昌: administrative center in southern Sìchuān -
- Xīchuān 西川: western part of Jiànnán see pages 16, 18, 20
- Xīdòng 溪洞: geographical term used for tribal group in northern Vietnam - see page 19
- Xīěr 西洱: shorter form of Xīěr Hé, a reference to Ěrhǎi – see page 43
- Xīěr Hé 西洱河: Xīěr River, historic name for Ěrhǎi, now in use for the river that flows out of the lake - see pages 14, 42, 68
- Xī Hàn 西汉: Western Hàn, dynastic period, 202BCE-8CE - see page 8, 68
- Xīlú 西泸: see page 14
- Xīnán Yí 西南夷: western and southern Yí, a term first appearing in the 《史记》 denoting non-Chinese people in presentday Sìchuān, Guìzhōu 贵州 and Yúnnán. It is often translated as 'southwestern barbarians', but it seems to be a short form referring to both Xī Yí 西夷 and Nán Yí 南夷, see Yang (2004), pp. 5–6 – see pages 45, 46,68

- Shénzōng, 1068–1077 see page 29
- **Xīpínghóu** 西平侯: marquis of Xīpíng, title of Mù Yīng 沐英 – see page 44,68
- Xīshān 西山: Western Hills, scenic mountains west of Diānchí 滇池 – see page 40,68
- Xī Yí 西夷: western Yí, see page 68
- Xīzhōu 巂州: Xīzhōu, a prefecture at presentday Xīchāng 西昌 – see pages 12, 14, 18, 19,68
- Xǐzhōu 喜洲: present-day town on western side of Ěrhǎi, about mondern location of Dàxī 大厘 - see page 15, see 大厘
- Xìnúluó 细奴逻: first ruler of Nánzhào, \*617 +674, ruled 649-674 CE - see page 11, 21
- Xiàcháo 夏朝: Xià Dynasty, first Chinese dynasty, ca. 2070–1600 – see page 46, 68
- 下 关: present-day administrative Xiàguān center of Dàli, literally meaning 'lower gate' as this was the southern fortification of the Dàli plain – see page 13, 45
- Xiāntiān 先天: reign period of Táng Xuánzōng 唐玄宗, 712-713 - see page 12
- Xiānyú Zhòngtōng 鲜于仲通: Táng dynasty Jiédùshǐ of Jiànnán – see page 14
- Xiántōng 咸通: reign period of Táng dynasty emperor Yìzōng 懿宗, 860-873 - see page 19
- Xiàn 县: county, administrative unit see pages 9, 12, 25, 46, 68
- Xiànsī 宪司: surveillance commission, 'surveillance commission', see Hucker (1985), 2537 - see page 38, 68
- Xiángfú 祥符: reign period of Sòng Zhēnzōng 宋真宗, 1008-1016 - see page 28

Xiángyún 祥云: -

- Xiàohéng 孝恒: posthumous name of Yìmóuxún – see page 17
- xìnjū 信 苴: prince, a honorific meaning 'prince' (see Zhāng Xílù 张锡禄 (2015), p. 43), granted to the Dàlǐ 大理 Zǒngguǎn 总管 see pages 35, 36, 41, 44, 69
- Xīngyuánguó 兴元国: name of Dàtiānxīngguó 大天兴国 in the 《云南志略》—
- Xiūlín 休林: see page 35
- Xuānwèi Shǐ 宣慰使: pacification commissioner, in Hucker (1985) only documented from the Yuán元 dynasty as 'one of the most prestigious titles granted aboriginal tribes in southwestern China and their natural, mostly hereditary chiefs', see Hucker (1985), 2682 – see pages 35, 44, 69
- Xuánfēngnián Yùnzhì 《玄峰年运志》
   : 'Xuánfēng Era Gazetteer', lost historic book, but maybe just part of the title of one book called Báigùtōng Xuánfēngnián Yùnzhì 白古通玄峰年运志 – see page 46, 69
- Xuánzōng 玄宗: Táng dynasty emperor, 712-756 - see pages 12, 16, 19
- Xúndiàn 寻句: present-day town east of Kūnmíng 昆明 – see page 35
- Xúngéquàn 寻阁劝: ruler of Nánzhào, ruled 808-809 CE - see page 17
- Yǎān 雅安: region in Sìchuān –
- Yǎzhōu 雅州: present-day Sìchuān Yǎān 雅安 (● 29.99N 103.01E) – see page 19, 20
- Yán Shīgǔ 颜师古: Táng dynasty historian and linguist -

- Yànmén 雁门: Goose Gate, poetic expression – see page 45, 69
- Yáng Dēng 杨登: assassin of Lóngshùn 隆舜 - see page 20
- Yáng Gānzhēn 杨干贞: founder of the Nánzhào successor state Dà Yìníng Guó 大义 宁国 in 928, ?-937 - see page 22, 23
- Yángjūmiē 阳苴哶: historic capital of Nánzhào, near present-day Dali – see page 15,16
- Yáng Shèn 杨慎: Míng 明 scholar, originally from Sìchuān, exiled to Yúnnán in 1524, compiler of the 《滇载记》 and many other works. His Hào 号 was 升庵 – see pages 5, 6, 39, 46, 48, see 滇载记
- Yángshì 杨氏: Yáng clan, one of the powerful clans of Nánzhào – see pages 22, 23, 25, 45, 69
- Yáng Sījìn 杨思缙: hucker 8134 see page 19
- Yáng Yìzhēn 杨义贞: short-lived ruler of Dàlǐ 大理, who deposed Duàn Liányì 段廉义 in 1080, only to be deposed himself a few months later – see page 29
- Yáng Yuānhǎi 杨渊海: see page 38, 41
- Yáng Zhì 杨智: servant of Duàn Gōng 段功 see page 39
- **Yàngbì** 漾濞: present-day county west of 苍山 - see page 9
- Yáoān 姚安: present-day county in Yúnnán -
- Yáoshùn 尧舜: Tángyáo and Yúshùn, short form for Tángyáo and Yúshùn, same as Tángyú 唐虞 – see page 47, 69
- Yáozhōu 姚州: Yáo prefecture, prefecture established by the Táng dynasty in 622, present-day Yáoān 姚安 (● 25.51N 101.24E) – see pages 12, 14, 69

- Yèjìnghú 叶镜湖: Yèjìng lake, lake in the Dàlǐ 大理 region, where Duàn Sīpíng 段思平 obtained a magic steed – see page 25, 70
- Yītǒngzhì 《一统志》: 'Unified Gazetteer', refers to the Dàmíngyītǒngzhì 大明一统 志 – see page 48, 70
- Yí 夷: one of the collective terms for non-Chinese people in the south-west – see pages 9, 10, 14, 21, 46, see 蛮
- Yíbīn 宜宾: city in southern Sìchuān –
- **Yícáo** 仪曹: ministry of rites, , see Hucker (1985), 3017 – see page 48, 70
- Yíláo 夷獠: tribal group in south-western Guǎngxī 广西, described in the Língwài Dàidá 岭外代答 – see page 19
- Yìmóuxún 异牟寻: ruler of Nánzhào, ruled 779-808 CE - see pages 14-16, see 首龙
- Yìzhōu 益州: Yìzhōu, one of thirteen administrative regions created by Hàn Wǔdì 汉 武帝 in 106BCE, covering the region of present-day Sìchuān with its center at 成 都. In 742 it became Shǔjùn 蜀郡, but the name remained in use to refer to 成都 – see pages 10, 44, 47, 70
- Yizōng 懿宗: Táng dynasty emperor, 859-873 - see page 19
- Yínshēng 银生: see page 15
- Yǐngchuān Hóu 颍川侯: marquis of Yǐngchuān, title of Fù Yǒudé 傅友德 – see page 44, 70
- Yingdào 应道: reign period of Nánzhào ruler Xúngéquàn, 809 – see page 17
- Yōng Kǎi 雍闓: clan leader during Zhūgé Liàng 诸葛亮's time, see Crespigny (2007), p. 989 – see page 10

- **Yōngxī** 雍熙: reign period of Sòng Tàizǔ 宋太 祖, 984-987 - see page 27
- Yōngzhōu 邕州: historic administrative region, first set up in the Táng dynasty, around present-day Nánníng 南宁 (● 22.82N 108.36E) – see page 19
- Yǒngchāng 永昌: present-day Bǎoshān 保山, a Chinese outpost founded in 69, see Fāng Guóyú 方国瑜 (1953) – see pages 5, 8, 10, 13, 15, 35, 45
- **Yǒngzhēn** 永贞: reign period of Duàn Zhèngxīng 段正兴, 1148- – see page 32
- Yòngxiū 用修: courtesy name of Yáng Shèn 杨 慎 – see page 48
- Yú 虞: state during the Chūnqiū 春秋 period see page 42
- Yúshùn 虞舜: -
- Yǔgòng《禹贡》: *'Tributes of Yǔ'*, ancient text, translated in Legge (1865) – see page 70
- Yùàn Shān 玉案山: Yùàn mountain, mountain east of Ěrhǎi – see page 37, 70
- Yùlóng Shān 玉龙山: Jade Dragon mountain, large mountain near Lìjiāng 丽江 – see page 15, 70
- **Yùshǐ** 御史: censor, title, see Hucker (1985), 8167 – see page 12, 70
- **Yuán** 元: Yuán, Chinese dynasty, 1271–1368 see pages 33–37, 44–46, 70
- Yuán Wǔzōng 元武宗: Külüg Khan, Yuán元 emperor, 1308–1311 – see page 70
- **Yuán Chéngzōng** 元成宗: Temür Khan, Yuán元 emperor, 1294–1308 – see page 70
- **Yuánfēng** 元丰: reign period of Sòng emperor Shénzōng, 1078–1085 – see page 29

- Yuánfēng 元封: reign period of Hàn Wǔdì 汉 武帝, 110-104BC - see page 45
- Yuánfú 元符: reign period of Sòng Zhézōng 朱 哲宗, 1098–1100 – see page 30
- Yuánhé 元和: sole reign period of Táng Xiànzōng 唐宪宗, 806-820 - see page 17
- Yuánshī 元师: marshall, 'a common designation for an eminent military officer on active campaign', see Hucker (1985), 8244 – see page 35, 71
- Yuánshǐ《元史》: 'History of the Yuán Dynasty', one of the official twenty-four Chinese histories, compiled during the Míng 明 – see page 71
- Yuán Shìzǔ 元世祖: Kublai Khan, Ménggǔ蒙 古 ruler, 1260–1294 – see pages 35, 44, 71
- Yuánshuàifǔ 元帅府: military command, 'designation given some southwestern aboriginal tribes', see Hucker (1985), 8245 – see page 34, 71
- Yuán 乙 袁滋: Táng dynasty envoy to Nánzhào in 794 – see page 16
- Yuán Cháo 元朝: Yuán dynasty, Chinese dynasty, 1279–1368 – see page 11, 71
- Yuāndú 身毒: ancient reference to India, first appearing in the 《史记》. The term is pronounced Yuāndú, see 《古代汉语词 典》(2002), p. 1385, not Shēndú, as in the 《通典》 it states (in the chapter on India):「颜师古云: 捐毒即身毒, 身毒则 天竺也。塞种即释种也,盖语音有轻重 也。」- Yán Shīgǔ noted: Juāndú is Yuāndú, Yuāndú is Tiānzhú. Just like Sāizhŏng is Shìzhŏng, they are variations in the intensity of the pronunciation.' However, this is not entirely uncontested as it can also be argued that this annotation mistakes a small state called Juāndú 捐毒 mentioned

in the《后汉书》(第八十六卷 for *Yuāndú*, see Wilkinson (2013), p. 358. The term is synonymous with 天竺 – see page 48, see 天竺

- Yuè Hóu 岳侯: Marquis of Yuè, honorific title given to some members of the Gāo clan – see page 29, 71
- Yuèxī 越巂: Prefecture belonging to Jiànnán. Called Xīzhōu 618-742 then Yuèxī 742-756, in 757 invaded and captured by Nánzhào and 吐蕃, later reestablished as 越巂 789-865 (璽 28.65N 102.5E) – see page 20
- Yuèfǔ 乐府: Yuèfǔ, poetry style see page 39, 71
- Yúnnán 云南: at the time of the Táng dynasty the name for the geographic region south of its Jiannan district – see pages 5, 6, 8, 10, 13−15, 25, 27, 34, 36−41, 47, 48
- Yúnnán Zhìlüè《云南志略》: 'General Record of Yúnnán', Yuán Cháo 元朝 dynasty history of Yúnnán, compiled by Lǐ Jīng 李京 – see page 71
- Yúnnán commandery 云南郡: Yúnnán commandery, commandery in the Yúnnányì 云南驿 plain – see page 47, 71
- Yúnnán Tújīng Zhìshū 云南图经志书: 'Illustrated Annals of Yúnnán', Jǐngtài 景 泰 period work on Yúnnán, completed in 1545 CE – see page 23, 71
- king of Yúnnán 云南王: king of Yúnnán, Táng dynasty title for some of the rulers of Nánzhào, first conferred upon 皮罗阁 in 738 – see page 13, 71
- Yúnnányì 云南驿: important caravan station, three stages before Dàlǐ 大理 (⊕ 25.39N 100.69E) -

- nán', Táng document detailing all aspects of Yúnnán – see page 9, 72
- Zànpǔ 赞普: title of the ruler of Tǔbō –
- Zànpǔ Zhōng 赞普锺: title given to the rulers of Nánzhào by 吐蕃, meaning 'younger brother' of the Zànpǔ 赞普, also written as Zànpǔzhōng 赞普钟 - see page 14, see 帶普
- **Zhàzhǔ** 栅主: *zhàzhǔ*, Dàlǐ kingdom title see page 31, 72
- Zhànguó 战国: Warring States, Warring States period, the time before the Qin dynasty, 475-221 BCE – see page 72
- Zhāng 张: common family or clan name see page 10
- Zhāng Dàozōng 张道宗: author of the 《纪 古滇说原集》, a man from Yúnnán, who lived at the end of the Sòng dynasty and beginning of the Yuán Cháo 元朝, otherwise nothing is known about him -
- Zhāng Lèjǐnqiú 张乐尽求: alternate form of Zhāng Lèjǐnqiú 张乐尽求 in the《南诏图 传》. Zhāng Xílù 张锡禄 (1990), p. 54 argues that the name should be segmented as Zhāng Lèjǐn Qiú 张乐尽求 as the Lèjǐn 乐尽 is a double name according to local tradition – see page 11
- Zhāng Qiān 张骞: see page 47
- Zhāng Qiántuō 张乾拖: see page 14
- Zhāngshì 张氏: Zhāng clan, ancient Yúnnán clan - see pages 11, 45, 72
- Zhāng Xīqiáo 张希乔: servant of Duàn Gōng 段功 - see page 39
- Zhāng Yuánhēng 张元亨: see page 44

- Yúnnán Zhì 《云南志》: 'Gazetteer of Yún- Zhāng Yúnhàn 张云汉: scholar from which Yáng Shèn 杨慎 obtained a copy of the 《白 古通》- see page 48
  - zhào 诏: zhào, term for a local ruler or his realm – see pages 9, 13, 72
  - Shànzhèng 赵善政: founder of Zhào the shortlived Nánzhào successor state Dàtiānxīngguó 大天兴国 in 928, ?-929 see page 22
  - Zhàoshì 赵氏: Zhào clan, clan name see pages 22, 23, 45, 72
  - Zhēnguān 贞观: reign period of Tángtàizōng, 627-649 - see page 11
  - Zhēnmíng 贞明: reign period of Lóngshùn 隆 舜 – see page 21
  - Zhēnyuán 贞元: reign period of Táng Dézōng 唐德宗, 785-805 CE - see page 16, 17
  - **Zhènfǔ** 镇抚: pacification officer, see page 45, 72
  - Zhèng Huí 郑回: Han administrator captured by Nánzhào, serving as teacher to the royal family and as prime minister – see pages 14, 16, 21
  - Zhèng Lóngdǎn 郑隆亶: ruler of Nánzhào successor state - see page 22
  - Zhèng Măisì 郑 买 嗣: first ruler of Dàchánghéguó 大长和国, ruled 902-909 CE – see page 21
  - Zhèng Mín 郑旻: son of Zhèng Mǎisì 郑买嗣 – see page 22
  - Zhèng Rénmín 郑仁旻: second ruler of Dàchánghéguó 大长和国, 910-926, son of Zhèng Mǎisì 郑买嗣 -
  - Zhèngshì 郑氏: Zhèng clan, – see pages 21, 22, 45, 72

- **Zhèngzhì** 正治: reign period of Duàn Sùzhēn 段素真, 1027- - see page 28
- Zhīfǔ 知府: prefect, 'prefect of a superior prefecture', see Hucker (1985), 983 - see page 38, 73
- Zhì 志: gazetteer, term for official regional records - see page 48, 73
- Zhìdà 至大: reign period of Yuán Wǔzōng 元 武宗, 1308-1311 - see page 37
- Zhìyuán 至元: reign period of Hūbìliè 忽必烈, 1264–1294 – see page 35
- **Zhìzhèng** 至正: reign period of Shùn Huángdì 顺皇帝, 1341-1368 - see page 38
- **Zhìzhì** 至治: reign period of Duànsīliáng, 946-951 - see page 26, 37, see 段思良
- **Zhōnghé** 中和: reign period of Táng Xīzōng 唐 僖宗, 881-885 - see page 20
- **Zhōngtǒng** 中统: reign period of Ménggǔ Shìzǔ 蒙古世祖, 1260-1264 - see page 35
- **Zhōngxīng** 中兴: reign period of Nánzhào ruler Shùnhuàzhēn 舜化贞, 898-902 see page 21
- **Zhōngyuè** 中岳: Central Marchmount, i.e. central holy mountain, translation by ??? - see page 15, 73
- **zhōu** 州: prefecture, administrative unit see Zuǒ 左: left, part of titles, junior to 右 see pages 9, 12, 15, 18, 19, 45, 73

- **Zhōu Qùfēi** 周去非: author of the Língwài Dàidá 岭外代答 -
- Zhōu Cháo 周朝: Zhōu dynasty, 1022-256 BCE, early Chinese dynasty – see page 46,73
- Zhūgé Liàng 诸葛亮: historic and legendary official of Shǔ 蜀, see Crespigny (2007), p. 1172 - see page 10
- Zhū Yuánzhāng 朱元璋: founding Míng 明 emperor -
- Zīzhì Tōngjiàn 《资治通鉴》: 'Comprehensive Mirror for Aid in Government', - see pages 20, 46, 73
- **Zǐ**  $\neq$ : courtesy name, a courtesy name traditionally given to Chinese people upon reaching adulthood – see page 48, 73
- **Zōngzhèng** 宗正: chamberlain for the imperial clan, 'one of the Nine Chamberlains', see Hucker (1985), 7080 - see page 20, 73
- Zǒngguǎn 总管: route commander, 'YÜAN: Route Commander; in collaboration with an Overseer headed a unit of territorial administration called a Route (lu), each supervising the governance of about 100.000 residents', see Hucker (1985), 7110 - see pages 34-36, 38, 41, 44, 73
- Zūnshèng 尊圣: reign period of Zhào Shànzhèng 赵善政, 928 – see page 23
  - page 41, 73

## References 5

Anderson, James (2007). 'The Rebel Den of Nùng Trí Cao: Loyalty and Identity along the Sino-Vietnamese Frontier'. Seattle: University of Washington Press (cit. on pp. 29, 62).

- Barlow, Jeffrey G. (1987). 'The Zhuang Minority Peoples of the Sino- Vietnamese Frontier in the Song Period'. In: Southeast Asian Studies 18.2, pp. 250–269 (cit. on pp. 29, 62).
- Ch'en, Hsiao-Lan and Frederick W. Mote (2002). '*Yang Shen and Huang O: Husband and Wife as Lovers, Poets, and Historical Figures*'. In: Chan, Marie(2002). '*Excursions in Chinese Culture*'. Chinese University Press (cit. on p. 40).

Coedès, G (1975). '*The Indianized States of Southeast Asia*'. Australian National University (cit. on p. 58).

Crespigny, Rafe de (2007). '*A Biographical Dictionary of Later Han to the Three Kingdoms* (23-220 *AD*)'. Leiden: Brill (cit. on pp. 70, 73).

Dǒng Ài 董艾 (2019).《云南巍山 🛛 时图山出土南诏佛教造像艺术: The Sculpture Art of Nanzhao Kingdom Excavated in Longyutu Mountain in Weishan County, Yunnan Province》. 昆明: 云南民族 出版社 (cit. on p. 60).

Fāng Guóyú 方国瑜 (1953).《两汉经略西南:郡县设置与行政同志》. In: Fāng Guóyú 方国瑜 (1994). 《方国瑜文集》. 云南教育出版社 (cit. on p. 70).

- (1987).《中国西南历史地理考释》. 中国北京: 中华书局 (cit. on p. 59).
- (1998).《云南史料丛刊》.云南大学出版社 (cit. on pp. 8, 9, 12, 13, 16, 17).

Fölster, Max Jakob (2009). '*Die Xia-Dynastie in Sichuan (1362-1371*)'. MA. Universität Hamburg (cit. on pp. 38, 61).

- Hé Jīnlóng 何金龙 (2015). 《■■山, 南诏国的 "龙舆" 山》. In: 大众考古 11, pp. 56–60 (cit. on pp. 11, 60).
- Herman, John E. (2009). '*The Kingdoms of Nanzhong China's Southwest Border Region Prior to the Eighth Century*'. In: *T'oung Pao* 9.4 (cit. on p. 65).

Herrmann, Albert (1922). '*Die Westländer in der Chinesischen Kartographie*'. In: Hedin, Sven(1922). '*Southern Tibet*'. Lithographic Institute of the General Staff of the Swedish Army (cit. on pp. 16, 49).

- Hóu Chōng 侯冲 (2011).《白族心史:〈白古通记〉研究》. Kunming: 云南人民出版社 (cit. on pp. 46, 49).
- Hú Chángchéng 胡长城 (2014).《寻找"哀牢古国": 云南昌宁大甸山墓地发掘》. In: 大众考古 8, pp. 29-34 (cit. on p. 49).
- Hú Chángchéng 胡长城, Wáng Líruì 王黎锐 and Yáng Fān 杨帆 (2016).《云南昌宁县大甸山墓地发 掘简报》. In: 考古 1, pp. 3-32+2 (cit. on p. 49).
- Hucker, Charles (1985). 'A Dictionary of Official Titles in Imperial China'. Stanford: Stanford University Press (cit. on pp. 50, 52, 55–59, 62, 63, 65, 67–71, 73).
- Legge, James (1865). 'The Chinese Classics'. Vol. 3. Trübner (cit. on p. 70).

Lian Ruizhi (2019). 'Buddhist Temples and Ancestral Halls: The Reconstruction of Native Official Rituals in Western Yunnan'. In: Chinese Studies in History 52.2, pp. 119–147 (cit. on p. 5).

- Lián Ruìzhī 连瑞枝 (2020).《僧侣士人土官:明朝统治下的西南人群与历史》.社会科学文献出版社 (cit. on p. 54).
- Liào Déguǎng 廖德广 (2016).《南诏野史选最与校按》. 昆明: 云南民族出版社 (cit. on pp. 8, 9, 11, 12, 14, 15, 17, 20-23, 26-29, 32-35, 53).
- Littlejohn, Ronnie L. (2020). '*Historical Dictionary of Daoism*'. Lanham, MD.: Rowman and Littlefield (cit. on p. 63).
- Lo, Ch'ang-pei (1945). '*The Genealogical Patronymic Linkage System of the Tibeto-Burman Speaking Tribes*'. In: *Harvard Journal of Asiatic Studies* 8.3/4, pp. 349–363 (cit. on p. 31).

Mù Qín 木芹 (1990).《南诏野史会证》. Kunming: 云南人民出版社 (cit. on p. 41).

- (1995).《云南志补注》. Kunming: 云南人民出版社 (cit. on p. 51).
- Pidhainy, Ihor (2005). '*The Temples of Yunnan: Literati Travel Writing during the Jiajing reign* (1522-1567)'. In: '*Unpublished Draft*' (cit. on p. 6).
- (2008). 'A Mid-Ming Account of the Road into Exile'. In: Ming Studies 58, pp. 8-42 (cit. on p. 45).
- (2011). 'Lives and Legends of Yang Shen: Creating a Man for All Seasons'. In: Ming Studies 64, pp. 7–32 (cit. on pp. 5, 6).
- Robinson, David M. (2020). 'In the Shadow of the Mongol Empire: Ming China and Eurasia'. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press (cit. on pp. 34, 37).
- Rock, Joseph Francis (1947). '*The Ancient Na-khi Kingdom of Southwest China*'. Vol. 1. Cambridge: Harvard University Press (cit. on pp. 6, 7).

Ruì Zēngruì 芮增瑞 (1992).《关于〈护法明公德运碑赞〉》. In: 楚雄师专学报 2, pp. 11-17 (cit. on p. 54).

- Sainson, Camille (1904). '*Nan-tchao Ye-che: Histoire particulière du Nan-tchao*'. Paris, France: Imprimerie Nationale (cit. on p. 41).
- Soothill, William E. and Lewis Hodous (2014). '*A Dictionary of Chinese Buddhist Terms*'. Routledge (cit. on p. 66).

Soper, Alexander C. and Helen B. Chapin (1970). 'A Long Roll of Buddhist Images (I): Foreword and Excursion on the Text of the Nan Chao Tu Chuan by Alexander C. Soper'. In: Artibus Asiae 31.1, pp. 5–41 (cit. on p. 61).

Tián Huáiqīng 田怀清 (2011).《南诏大理国瓦文》. Kunming: 云南人民出版社 (cit. on p. 60).

- Wàn Kuíyī 万揆一 (1986).《楚雄 〈护法明公德运碑赞〉简探》. In: 云南师范大学学报 2, pp. 36-38 (cit. on p. 54).
- Wang, Hongjie (2011). '*Power and Politics in Tenth-century China: the Former Shu Regime*'. Cambria Press (cit. on p. 67).
- Wáng Wéncái 王文才 (1985).《升庵著述序跋》. Kunming: 云南人民出版社 (cit. on p. 8).
- Wáng Yúnwǔ 王云五 (1936).《大理行记及其它五種》. 商务印书馆 (cit. on pp. 8–10, 16, 17, 19, 26, 36, 37).
- Wilkinson, Endymion Porter (2013). '*Chinese History: A New Manual*'. Cambridge: Harvard University Press (cit. on p. 71).
- Yang, Bin (2004). 'Between Winds and Clouds: The Making of Yunnan (Second Century BCE to Twentieth Century CE)'. New York: Columbia University Press (cit. on p. 68).
- Yáng Shēngān 杨升庵 (2002).《杨升庵丛书》. 天地出版社 (cit. on pp. 5, 8).
- Yi Lidu (2011). "*He wore Flowers in his Hair*": *Understanding a Late-Ming through his Mid-Ming Subject*'. In: *Ming Studies* 64, pp. 33–45 (cit. on pp. 5, 6).
- Yu, Tianshu (2018). 'Queen Hudijin: A Medea-like Chinese Woman in Guo Moruo's Historical Play The Peacock' s Gallbladder'. In: Renger, Almut-Barbara and Fan, Xin(2018). 'Receptions of Greek and Roman Antiquity in East Asia'. Brill (cit. on p. 39).
- Zhāng Nǎiwēn 张乃温 (2022).《巍山垅圩图山出土的几尊南北朝佛教造像年代断定》. In: 中国美术 研究 2, pp. 97-103 (cit. on p. 60).
- Zhāng Xílù 张锡禄 (1990).《南诏国王蒙氏与白族古代姓名制度研究》. In: 东南亚 4 (cit. on p. 72).
- (2006).《元代大理段氏总管史》.昆明:云南民族出版社 (cit. on p. 34).
- (2015).《元代大理段氏总管史》. Kunming: 云南人民出版社 (cit. on pp. 23, 34, 35, 42, 53, 57, 69). Zhōu Zhènhè 周振鹤 (2012).《中国行政区划通史: 唐代卷》. 复旦大学出版社 (cit. on p. 49). 《古代汉语词典》 (2002). 商务印书馆 (cit. on p. 71).

## Index

225年,10-24-10-251 629年, 11-47-11-48*n* 649年, 11-47-11-48n 674年, 11-56-11-57n 710年, 11-58n 712年, 12-70-12-711 713年,12-70-12-711 728年,13-75-13-76n 749年, 13-103*n* 754年, 14-124n 779年, 14-129n, 15-134-15-135n 785-805年,72 787年, 16-181*n* 793年,16-189n 794年, 16-191*1* 799年, 17-207-17-2081 806年, 17-212-17-213n, 17-217-17-218n 808年, 17-207-17-208n 809年, 17-212-17-213n 816年, 17-217-17-218n 824年, 18-221-18-222n 829年,18-224n 840-859年,66 846年, 18-244-18-2451 853年,18-244-18-2451 859年, 18-244-18-245n 862年, 19-256n 863年, 19-258n 864年, 19-262n 866年, 19-264n 869年, 19-266n 870年, 19-268n 874年, 20-270n 875年, 20-273n 877年, 20-277n, 20-286-20-287n 880年, 20-292n 881年, 20-294n 883年, 20-295n 897年, 21-301-21-302n 901年, 21-316n 902年, 21-316n

928年, 22-342-22-343n 937年, 23-000, 25-391*n* 945年, 26-398n 946年, 26-398n 953年, 26-402*n*, 27-403*n* 963年, 26-408-26-409*n* 964年, 26-410*n* 969年, 26-408-26-409n 979年, 26-418n 985年, 27-421-27-422*n* 999年, 14-112n 1009年,28-426-28-4271 1018年, 28-431*n* 1026年,28-436-28-4371 1041年, 28-440*n* 1044年, 29-443n 1075年, 29-453n 1081年, 29-462*n* 1082年, 29-462*n* 1094年, 30-469-30-470*n* 1099年, 30-469-30-470*n* 1108年, 31-498-31-4991 1147年, 32-506-32-5071 1173年, 32-513-32-514n 1200年, 32-519-32-5201 1205年, 33-524-33-525*n* 1238年, 33-529-33-530*n* 1239年, 33-529-33-5301 1244年, <u>33-53</u>1*n* 1251年, <u>33-537</u>n 1252年, <u>33-539</u>n 1261年, 35-564n 1264-1294年, 35-576n 1297-1307年, 37-5941 1309年, 37-597n 1321年, 37-603n 1352年, 38-612n 1363年, 38-614n 1368年, 41-727n 1372年, 42-552 1381年, 44-811*n*, 44-813*n*, 45-843*n*, 45-856*n*  1524年,5 1525年,5 1543年, 8, 47, 49-69n 1544年,7 1545年,5 1605年,8 1936年,8 Āgái 阿禚, 39-645R Āgáizhǔ 阿襤主, 40-671R, 40-688R, 40-694R, 42-744R Ā Lí 阿黎, 42-550, 42-765R Ā Nú 阿奴, 40-679R, 40-679R, 40-679n, 40-689R, 40-691R, 40-701R, 40-702R Āiláo Shān 哀牢山, 8-2R Āiláo Chuán 哀牢传,8 Ānguó 安国, 22-319R Ānnán 安南, 19-257R Bāyǎn 八演, 16-177R Báigǔtōng 白古通, 46-552, 47, 48-35R Báigǔtōng Xuánfēngnián Yùnzhì 白古通玄峰 年运志, 46-552, 46-552, 46-886R Bái Guó 白国, 11-37R Báiyá 白崖, 10-23R, 10-27R, 10-30R Báizú 白族, 13-80n Bǎohé 保和, 18-243R Bì 璧, 42-738R Bìjī 碧鸡, 39-669R, 39-668-39-669n Bó 僰, 27-416R, 46-886R, 46-889R, 47-5R, 47-6R Bónán 博南, 48-31R Bōsī 波斯, 31-485R Bù 部, 15-149R, 47-12R Cānzhèng 参政, 35-568R, 36-585R Cāngshān 苍山, 13-91R, 40-699R Chángqìng 长庆, 18-222R Chén Hóngshòu 陈洪绶, 5 Chén Huì 陈惠, 38-639R Chéng 丞, 41-730R Chéngdū 成都, 18-232R, 18-246n, 18-248R, 19-268R Chù Guó 楚国, 38-614R Chuān 川, 10-23R, 10-27R, 45-859R

Chūnqiū 春秋, 47-908R, 47-912R, 47-911-47-912n Cìshǐ 刺史, 11-51R Cuàn 爨, 27-416R Cuóyé 嵯耶, 21-300R Dàchánghéguó 大长和国, 21-313, 22-318R Dàdé 大德, 37-594R Dàdù Hé 大渡河, 20-275R, 27-413R Dàfēng Mínguó 大封民国, 11-46R Dàguān 大观, 31-499R Dàlì 大历, 14-129R, 15-135R Dàlǐ 大理, 15-140R, 15-140R, 23-000, 25-388R, 25-390R, 29-445R, 29-446R, 29-447R, 31-485R, 33-542R, 34-442, 34-555R, 35-462, 35-462, 35-566R, 37-596n, 39-649R, 39-650*n*, 40-679*n*, 41-724R, 41-728R, 41-733R, 44-819R, 45-855R, 45-861R Dàlǐ Guó 大理国, 23-000, 34-452 Dàlǐyì 大礼议, 48-29-48-31n Dà Méng Guó 大蒙国, 14-122R, 23-348R Dàtiānxīngguó 大天兴国, 22-344R Dà Yìníng Guó 大义宁国, 23-349R Dàzhōng Guó 大中国, 30-471R Dàizōng 代宗, 14-129R Dàn 赕, 13-96R, 13-97R Dào 道, 17-214R, 23-350R, 28-442R Déhuà Bēi 德化碑, 14-119-14-120n Dèngchuān 邓川, 9-14R, 9-14R, 13-95*n*, 13-96R, 45-857R, 45-858R, 45-861R Dīmóujū 低牟苴, 8-1R, 11-42R Díqīng 狄青, 29-445R Diān 滇, 8-1R, 27-411R, 41-716R, 45-867R, 46-889R, 47-7R, 47-9R, 47-9R, 48-36R Diǎncāng Shān 点苍山, 15-144R, 16-171R, 41-717R, 42-748R, 45-844R Diānchí 滇池, 5, 40-696R Diān Wáng 滇王, 45-869R Diānzàijì 滇载记, 5-8, 47-1R, 47-911R Dìngxī Líng 定西岭, 10-23R Dōngchuān 东川, 15-145R, 22-333R Dǒng Jiāluō 董迦罗, 25-376R Dūdū 都督, 14-104R

Dù Yuányǐng 杜元颖, 18-225R, 18-238R Duàn 段, 40-701R, 45-874R, 46-883R, 47-910R Duàn Bǎo 段宝, 41-518, 41-725R, 41-730R, 41-733R, 42-528, 42-763R, 42-766R, 43-795R, 44-808R, 45-850R Duàn Gōng 段功, 38-462, 38-609R, 38-621R, 38-633R, 39-642R, 39-645R, 39-646R, 39-648R, 39-664R, 40-673R, 40-679n, 41-726R, 42-536 Duàn Guāng 段光, 36-592R, 37-598R, 37-599R Duàn Héyù 段和誉, 24-000 Duàn Jiǎnwèi 段俭魏, 14-114R, 14-117R, 14-122R, 23-000, 23-358R Duàn Jùn 段俊, 36-590R Duàn Liányì 段廉义, 24-000, 29-362, 29-452R, 29-453R, 29-459R Duàn Lóng 段隆, 36-588R Duàn Míng 段明, 44-808R, 44-810R, 44-816R, 44-816n, 44-828R, 44-833R, 45-847R Duàn Qìng 段庆, 35-581R Duàn Rén 段仁, 45-848R Duàn Sēngnú 段僧奴, 42-523, 42-764R Duàn Shì 段氏, 23-000, 23-000, 23-355R, 23-356R, 27-416R, 29-448R, 29-457R, 30-362, 30-466R, 30-468R, 31-473R, 31-478R, 31-479R, 34-439, 34-459, 34-551R, 34-553R, 34-556R, 34-561R, 37-596R, 37-596n, 38-625R, 38-628R, 39-667R, 44-823R, 44-838R, 45-846R, 45-873R Duàn Shí 段实, 35-462, 35-563R Duàn Shòuhuī 段寿辉, 24-000, 29-362, 29-459R, 29-459R, 29-460R Duàn Sīcōng 段思聪, 24-000, 26-362, 26-401R, 26-402R, 27-406R Duàn Sīlián 段思廉, 24-000, 28-442R, 29-362, 29-443R, 29-449R Duàn Sīliáng 段思良, 24-000, 26-362, 26-397R, 26-398R Duàn Sīpíng 段思平, 23-346, 23-352R, 23-359, 23-360R, 23-360R, 24-355, 25-363R, 25-367R, 25-373R, 25-383R, 26-395–26-396*n*, 34-551R Duàn Sīyīng 段思英, 24-000, 25-362, 25-394R

Duàn Sùlián 段素廉, 24-000, 27-425R, 28-362, 28-426R Duàn Sùlóng 段素隆, 24-000, 28-362, 28-430R, 28-431R Duàn Sùshùn 段素顺, 24-000, 26-406n, 27-362, 27-406R, 27-406R, 27-408R, 27-418R Duàn Sùtōng 段素通, 24-000 Duàn Sùxīng 段素兴, 24-000, 28-362, 28-439R, 28-440R Duàn Sùyīng 段素英, 24-000, 27-362, 27-420R, 27-421R Duàn Sùzhēn 段素真, 24-000, 28-362, 28-435R, 28-436R Duàn Xiángxīng 段祥兴, 24-000, 33-430, 33-528R, 33-529R, 33-534R Duàn Xìnjū Fú 段信苴福, 23-000, 23-000 Duàn Xīngzhì 段兴智, 24-000, 33-435, 33-536R, 33-537R, 33-543R, 33-545R, 34-550R, 34-551R, 34-558R, 34-560R, 35-462, 35-462 Duàn Yì 段义, 36-591R, 45-848R Duàn Zhēn 段真, 43-796R Duàn Zhèng 段正, 36-586R Duàn Zhèngchún 段正淳, 24-000, 31-393, 31-479R, 31-487R Duàn Zhèngmíng 段正明, 24-000, 29-362, 29-461R, 29-462R Duàn Zhèngxīng 段正兴, 24-000, 32-401, 32-503R, 32-506R Duàn Zhèngyán 段正严, 31-396, 31-495R, 31-498R Duàn Zhìlián 段智廉, 24-000, 32-420, 32-518R, 32-519R Duàn Zhìsī 段智思, 24-000 Duàn Zhìxiáng 段智祥, 24-000, 32-523R, 33-425, 33-524R Duàn Zhìxīng 段智兴, 24-000, 32-407, 32-510R, 32-513R Duàn Zhōng 段忠, 35-574R Duàn Zhōngguó 段忠国, 14-117R, 23-359R Ěrhǎi 洱海, 9-9, 13-91R, 16-171R, 18-246n, 25-372n

Fèngjiāyì 凤伽异, 13-98R, 14-114R, 14-131R Fēngyòu 丰佑, 17-220R Fóguāng Zhài 佛光寨, 45-857R, 45-861R Fǔ 府, 9-12R, 9-17R, 34-554R, 35-570R Fù Yǒudé 傅友德, 44-817R, 44-826R, 44-833R, 45-843R, 45-860R Gānsù 甘肃, 23-000, 33-540n Gāo Hé 高禾, 33-531R Gāohuángdì Yùzhì Wénjí 高皇帝御制文集, 43-798-43-799n Gāolígòng Shān 高黎贡山, 15-154R, 15-161R Gāo Liàngchéng 高量成, 30-362 Gāo Míngliàng 高明量, 30-362 Gāo Míngqīng 高明清, 30-362 Gāo Míngshùn 高明顺, 30-362 Gāopéng 高蓬, 37-599R, 37-600R, 37-601R Gāo Pián 高骈, 19-264R, 20-273R, 20-275R Gāo Shēngtài 高升泰, 29-458R, 30-362, 30-362, 30-466R, 30-468R Gāo Shēngxiáng 高升祥, 30-362 Gāo Shì 高氏, 30-465R, 31-482R, 39-649R, 45-873R Gāo Shòuchāng 高寿昌, 30-362 Gāo Shùnzhēn 高顺贞, 30-362 Gāo Tàilián 高太连, 31-488R, 31-490R Gāo Tàimíng 高泰明, 30-362, 31-473R, 31-473n, 31-478R, 31-488R Gāo Tàixiáng 高泰祥, 33-543R, 33-543n, 33-545R, 33-545R Gāo Tàiyùn 高泰运, 30-362 Gāoyáo 高峣, 5 Gāo Zhēnmíng 高贞明, 30-362 Gāo Zhēnshòu 高贞寿, 30-362 Gāo Zhìshēng 高智升, 29-457R, 30-362 Gāozōng 高宗, 12-57R Gāozǔ 高祖, 11-53R, 11-53n, 11-53n Géluōfèng 阁罗凤, 13-102R, 13-102, 13-103R, 14-105R, 14-108R, 23-000 Gǔtiánsì 古田寺, 38-627R Guāntān 关滩, 38-623R Guǎngdé 广德, 27-404R Guānghuà 光化, 21-316R Guǎnglíngyāoluànzhì 广陵妖乱志, 46-906R

Guǎngmíng 广明, 27-422R Guǎngshùn 广顺, 27-403R Guǎngxī 广西, 29-444R Guǎngzhōu 广州, 29-445R Guīyì 归义, 13-77R Guīzī 龟兹, 16-200R Guó 虢, 42-738R, 42-738n, 42-738n Guō Mòruò 郭沫若, 39-505 Hàn 汉, 22-325R, 44-835R, 46-881R, 46-890R, 47-6R, 47-9R, 47-23R, 48-37R Hàn Cháo 汉朝, 10-21R, 46-889n, 47-8R Hàn Wùdì 汉武帝, 44-829R Hào 号, 47 Héluòxíng Niánjì 河洛行年纪, 46-906R Hēi Cuàn 黑爨, 25-370R Hēihuì 黑惠, 16-169R Hóngjīn 红巾, 38-616R, 38-617R, 38-623R, 38-624R, 38-627R, 38-628R, 38-631R, 38-639R, 39-644R Hónglú 鸿胪, 13-99R Hóngwǔ 洪武, 41-727R, 44-811R Hóu 侯, 45-86oR Hòujìn 后晋, 25-391R, 26-398R Hòulǐguó 后理国, 31-48oR Hòushǔ 后蜀, 26-410n Houtáng Míngzōng 后唐明宗, 22-342R Hòuzhōu 后周, 26-402R Hūbìliè 忽必烈, 33-539R, 37-595n Hǔfú 虎符, 35-572R Huìchāng 会昌, 18-245R Huìchénggōngzhǔ 会城公主, 22-326R Huìchuān 会川, 35-566R, 35-577R, 43-797R Huídèng 回磴, 38-630R Huǒbǎjié 火把节, 13-80n Jìgǔdiānshuō Yuánjí 纪古滇说原集, 23-000 Jiājìng 嘉靖, 49-69R Jiāxī 嘉熙, 33-530R Jiāzhōu 嘉州, 19-267R

Jiànchāng 建昌, 9-18R, 35-567R, 42-550, 42-765R Jiànchuān 剑川, 22-332*n*, 22-333*n* Jiànjí 建极, 20-283R Jiànlóng 建隆, 27-409R Jiànlóng 见龙, 17-205R Jiànnán 剑南, 13-85R, 14-112R, 14-124R Jiànníng 建宁, 47-14R Jiànníng Guó 建宁国, 11-38R Jiānwèi 犍为, 19-267R Jiànxīng 建兴, 10-25R Jiànyuán 谏垣, 48-58R Jiāng 将, 40-687R Jiāng Lóng 姜龙, 8, 47, 48-26R, 49-65R, 49-69R Jiāngwěi 江尾, 25-387R Jiāozhǐ 交趾, 16-175R, 19-258R, 19-265R Jìn 晋, 42-738*n*, 47-15R Jīnchǐ 金齿, 8-3R, 35-579R Jīnlíng 金陵, 43-796R, 43-795-43-796n, 45-848R Jīnmǎ 金马, 39-668R, 39-668-39-669n, 42-747R Jīnshā 金沙, 33-541R Jǐngjìngsì 景净寺, 20-277R Jìngwáng 靖王, 17-219R Jǐngyún 景云, 12-58R Jǐngzhuāng Huángdì 景庄皇帝, 20-282R Jiǔlóng 九隆, 8-6R, 10-22R, 11-41R Jùn 郡, 10-29R, 23-357R, 35-567R, 46-894R, 47-11R Jūn 君, 43-803R Kāixī 开僖, 33-525R Kāiyuán 开元, 13-75R Kāiyùn 开运, 26-398R

Kāiyùan 开运, 26-398R Kāiyùn 开运, 26-398R Kŏngquè Dǎn 孔雀胆, 39-512 Kŏngzǐ 孔子, 12-72R, 47-908R Kūnlún 昆仑, 15-155R Kūnlúnguó 昆仑国, 31-485R Kūnmíguó 昆弥国, 10-23R, 11-37R Kūnmíng 昆明, 6, 42-749R

Láncāng 澜沧, 16-169R Làngqióng 浪穹, 9-13R, 9-13R, 9-15R Lǐ Déyù 李德裕, 18-238R, 18-239R Lǐ Guīnián 李龟年, 20-293R Lìjiāng 丽江, 9-16R, 15-164R, 15-165R, 16-170R Lǐ Mì 李宓, 14-124R Lǐ Shèng 李晟, 15-138R Lǐ Zhīgǔ 李知古, 12-60R, 12-65R Lízhōu 黎州, 19-267R, 20-271R, 22-322R Liǎnglín 两林, 35-576R, 35-576n Liángwáng 梁王, 37-595R, 37-595*n*, 37-596*n*, 37-597R, 37-599R, 37-601R, 38-619R, 39-644R, 39-648R, 39-666R, 39-667R, 39-670R, 40-692R, 41-721R, 41-728R, 41-732R, 42-763R, 44-814R, 44-840R Líntáo 临洮, 33-540R Liú Bèi 刘备, 47-13R, 47-13n Liùzhào 六诏, 9-9, 12-74 Lóngchuān 龙川, 15-156R Lóngqiè 龙怯, 13-97R Lóngshǒu 龙首, 13-95R Lóngshùn 隆舜, 20-283R, 20-283, 20-284R, 20-286R Lóngwěi 龙尾, 13-95R, 25-372n Lóngxīng 龙兴, 17-216R, 32-508R Lóng Yòunà 龙佑那, 10-24R, 10-27R, 11-35R Lóngyú Shān 龙于山, 11-49R, 11-49n Lùjiāng 潞江, 16-169R Lù Jùnmíng 陆浚明, 48-58R, 48-60R Lùquàn 禄劝, 15-147R Luōshèng 罗晟, 12-55R, 12-56R, 12-67R Méng 蒙, 25-389R, 45-874R, 46-883R, 47-910R, 48-38R Mèngbīn 梦宾, 47, 49-70R Ménggǔ Shìzǔ Hūbìliè 蒙古世祖忽必烈, 34-548R Ménggǔxiànzōng 蒙古宪宗, 33-537R Ménghuà 蒙化, 9-12R, 11-49R, 38-611R Méngshè 蒙舍, 9-12R, 13-94R Méng Shì 蒙氏, 11-36R, 11-39, 11-39, 11-40R, 11-47R, 14-125R, 21-311R, 21-313, 21-315R, 21-317R, 23-358R, 44-822R, 44-838R, 45-872R Méngxī Zhào 蒙雟诏, 9-17R Miǎndiàn 缅甸, 35-578R

Míng 明, 45-848n

Míng Cháo 明朝, 5, 44-834R

Míngdé 明德, 27-403R, 27-423R

Mínghóngwǔ 明洪武, 43-795-43-796n

Míngshèng 明圣, 27-423R Míngtōng 明通, 28-432R Míng Xià 明夏, 38-467 Míngyìng 明应, 27-422R Míng Yùzhēn 明玉珍, 38-486, 38-614R, 38-617R, 38-617n, 38-633R, 39-640R, 41-731R Míngzhì 明治, 27-423R Móhēluōcuó 摩诃罗嵯, 34-558R, 34-558n, 34-558n Móxiē Zhào 磨些诏, 9-15n, 9-16R Mùshìtúpǔ 木氏图谱,5 Mù Yīng 沐英, 44-818R, 45-843R Nánhàn 南汉, 21-313, 22-325R Nánjīng 南京, 43-795-43-796n, 45-848n Nánsòng Níngzōng 南宋宁宗, 32-519R, 33-524R Nánsòng Xiàozōng 南宋孝宗, 32-513R Nánzhào Túchuán 南诏图传, 11-53n, 12-54n, 26-395-26-396n Nánzhào Yěshǐ 南诏野史, 5, 41-728n Nóng Zhìgāo 侬智高, 29-444R, 29-444n, 29-447R Píluōgé 皮罗阁, 12-73R, 12-74, 13-75R, 13-81R, 13-82R, 13-85R Piàoguó 骠国, 16-175R Pǐndiàn 品 旬, 25-364R Píngzhāng 平章, 39-646R, 39-667R, 39-670R, 40-674R, 40-678R, 40-680R, 41-708R, 41-723R, 41-728R, 41-728n, 42-741R, 42-755R, 42-764R Pǔ Yánnóng 普颜秾, 45-856R Qí Wáng 奇王, 11-53R Qīxīng 七星, 39-642R, 45-860R Qiándào 乾道, 32-514R Qiánxīng 乾兴, 28-426-28-427n Qiánfú 乾符, 20-270R, 20-287R Qiánníng 乾宁, 21-302R Qín 秦, 47-7R, 47-23R Qínxiāngwáng 秦襄王, 47-7R, 47-7n Qīng Cháo 清朝,5 Qìnglì 庆历, 28-440R, 29-443R

Qīngxīguān 清溪关, 18-246R, 18-246n Qìngyuán 庆元, 32-520R Qióngzhōu 邛州, 18-231R Qūjìng曲靖, 35-570R Ouànfēngyòu 劝丰佑, 18-220, 18-221R, 18-237R, 18-241R Quànlìshèng 劝利晟, 17-215R, 17-216, 17-217R Quànlóngshèng 劝龙晟, 17-209R, 17-211, 17-212R Quányì 全义, 17-220R Réndé 仁德, 35-570R Rénguǒ 仁果, 10-21R Rìdōngwáng 日东王, 15-141R Róngzhōu 戎州, 18-231R Sānguó Zhì 三国志, 10-23 Sānhuáng Miào 三皇庙, 15-142R Sānshíqībù 三十七部, 25-371R Shāyī 沙壹, 8-4R Shāzhuī 沙追, 13-96R Shànchǎn 善阐, 16-179R, 33-545R, 35-566R, 35-577R, 37-595R, 37-596n, 39-666R, 41-731R, 43-772R, 44-814R, 44-819R, 44-831R Shāngcháo 商朝, 46-889n Shàngguān 上关, 13-95R Shàngyuán 上元, 12-57R, 17-205R Shǎoqīng 少卿, 13-99R, 20-293R Shàoxīng 绍兴, 32-507R Shéncèjūn 神策军, 15-138R Shénchuān 神川, 16-176R Shénnóng 神农, 46-897R Shēngān 升庵, 5 Shēngān Zānhuā Tú 升庵簪花图,5 Shèngluópí 盛逻皮, 12-68R, 12-69, 12-69, 12-70R Shèngmíng 盛明, 32-508R Shíchéng 石城, 35-570R Shǐchéng 史城, 15-136R, 15-136R Shígǔ 石鼓, 13-96R Shǐlà 矢剌, 41-728R Shīlàng 施浪, 9-15R

Shìlóng 世隆, 18-242R, 18-243, 18-244R, 18-244–18-245*n*, 19-251R, 19-254R, 19-254R, 19-266R, 20-279R, 20-286R Shī Xiù 施秀, 40-690R, 40-702R Shǐyuán 始元, 22-327R Shìzōng 世宗, 12-68R Shī Zōng 施宗, 40-689R, 40-702R Shǔ 蜀, 16-168R, 18-228R, 18-230R, 18-246R, 21-313, 22-322R, 27-410R, 38-614R, 39-658R, 48-29R Shù Hàn 蜀汉, 10-25R, 47-13n Shuǎng 爽, 16-172R Shùnhuàzhēn 舜化贞, 21-299R, 21-300, 21-301R, 21-311R Sìkùquánshū 四庫全书, 5 Sīmǎ 司马, 46-881R, 46-904R, 46-904-46-905*n*, 47-912*R*, 47-912*n* Sīmǎ Guāng 司马光, 46-904-46-905n, 47-912n Sīmǎ Qiān 司马迁, 45-865n Sòng 宋, 28-431R, 28-440R, 29-443R, 29-453R, 29-462R, 31-490R, 33-532R, 44-820R, 44-822R, 44-836R, 46-904R Sōng Cuàn 松爨, 25-371R Sòng Gāozōng 宋高宗, 32-506R Sòng Huīzōng 宋徽宗, 31-498R Sòng Lǐzōng 宋理宗, 33-529R Sōngmínglóu 松明楼, 12-74, 13-81R Sòngrénzōng 宋仁宗, 28-436R Sòng Tàizǔ 宋太祖, 26-411*n*, 27-408R, 27-411R, 27-421R Sōngwài 松外, 15-146R Sòng Zhézōng 宋哲宗, 30-470R Sòng Zhēnzōng 宋真宗, 28-426R, 28-426-28-427n, 28-427-28-428n Sōngzhōu 松州, 16-168R Tàihé 太和, 13-91R, 13-93R, 18-224R Tàishí 太石, 16-176R

Tàishǒu 太守, 14-107R Tàizǔ 太祖, 25-393R, 45-849R

Táng 唐, 11-36R, 11-48R, 12-67R, 12-74, 13-98R, 13-102, 14-110R, 14-115R, 14-121R, 14-126R, 14-133, 15-138R, 16-183R,

16-190R, 16-195R, 21-304R, 21-304R, 21-314R, 27-412R, 44-819R, 44-822R, 44-835R, 47-15R Táng Cháo 唐朝, 9-9 Táng Dàizōng 唐代宗, 15-135R Táng Dézōng 唐德宗, 16-181R, 17-207R Táng Gāozōng 唐高宗, 11-50R, 11-50n Táng Mùzōng 唐穆宗, 18-221R Táng Ruìzōng 唐睿宗, 12-58R Táng Wénzōng 唐文宗, 18-224R Táng Wùzōng 唐武宗, 18-244R, 18-244-18-245n Táng Xīzōng 唐僖宗, 20-270R, 20-287R Tángxīzōngguǎngmíng 唐僖宗广明, 20-292R Táng Xiànzōng 唐宪宗, 17-212R, 17-217R Táng Xuánzōng 唐玄宗, 13-76R Tángyú 唐虞, 47-3R Táng Zhāozōng 唐昭宗, 21-301R, 21-316R, 21-316n Téngchōng 腾冲, 15-155R Téng Dàn 遺赕, 9-13n Téngyuè 腾越, 15-153R, 35-567R Tiānbǎo 天宝, 13-103R, 14-112R Tiānchéng 天成, 22-343R Tiāndìng 天定, 33-538R Tiānfù 天復, 21-316n Tiānfú 天福, 25-391R Tiāngǒu 天狗, 37-604-37-605n Tiānqǐ 天启, 18-243R Tiānshèng 天圣, 28-437R Tiānxǐ 天禧, 28-431R Tiānyìng 天应, 22-331R Tiěmùdehǎn 铁木的罕, 41-732R Tiěqiáo 铁桥, 16-173R Tiě Wànhù 铁万户, 38-625R Tōnghǎi 通海, 23-352R Tōngjì Qiáo 通济桥, 40-686R Tǔbō 吐蕃, 12-59R, 12-65R, 13-88R, 14-118R, 15-137R, 15-140–15-141*n*, 16-176R, 16-186R, 16-187R, 16-187R, 16-189R, 16-192R, 16-193R Tuō 托, 16-172R

Wáng Cuódiān 王嵯颠, 17-214R, 17-214*n*,

18-228R Wáng Jiàn 王建, 21-305R, 22-322R Wáng Quánbīn 王全斌, 26-410*n*, 27-410R Wèi 卫, 45-853R, 45-855R Weichéng Wáng 威成王, 12-73R Wēichǔ 威楚, 38-620R Wéi Gāo 韦皋, 16-184R, 16-186R, 18-246R Wēishān 巍山, 9-17-9-18*n*, 11-43R Wēizhōu 巍州, 11-51R Wéndé 文德, 25-390R Wénwǔ Huángdì 文武皇帝, 26-395-26-396n Wǔdìng 武定, 35-578R Wù Hóu 武侯, 10-25R, 10-31R Wǔhuá Lóu 五华楼, 34-546R Wúliàng Shān 无量山, 15-151R Wūqián 巫黔, 16-177R Wǔwēi 武威, 23-000, 23-356R Wǔwēi Gōng 武威公, 23-000 Wǔxuānhuángdì 武宣皇帝, 20-298R Wǔyuèsìdú 五岳四渎, 15-141R, 15-141-15-142n

Xīchuān 西川, 16-184R, 18-225R, 20-270R, 20-274R Xīěr 西洱, 43-771R Xīěr Hé 西洱河, 14-114R, 42-749R Xī Hàn 西汉, 8 Xīlú 西泸, 14-110R Xīnán Yí 西南夷, 45-866R, 46-881R Xīníng 熙宁, 29-453R Xìnúluó 细奴逻, 11-39, 11-40R, 11-51R, 21-311R Xīpínghóu 西平侯, 44-817R Xīshān 西山, 40-706R Xīzhōu 巂州, 12-63R, 12-66R, 14-110R, 18-231R, 19-254R Xǐzhōu 喜洲, 15-137R Xiàcháo 夏朝, 46-889n Xiàguān下关, 13-95R, 45-845R Xiànsī 宪司, 38-619R Xiāntiān 先天, 12-71R Xiántōng 咸通, 19-256R Xiānyúzhòngtōng 鲜于仲通, 14-113R, 14-115R Xiángfú 祥符, 28-427R Xiàohéng 孝恒, 17-204R

Xìnjū 信苴, 35-462, 35-462, 35-563R, 35-574R, 35-581R, 36-586R, 36-588R, 36-590R, 36-591R, 36-592R, 41-725R, 44-810R Xiūlín 休林, 35-578R Xuánfēngnián Yùnzhì 玄峰年运志, 46-552 Xuānwèi Shǐ 宣慰使, 35-579R, 44-811R Xuánzōng 玄宗, 12-71R, 16-198R, 19-252R Xúndiàn 寻甸, 35-571R Xúngéquàn 寻阁劝, 17-206R, 17-206, 17-207R Yǎzhōu 雅州, 19-267R, 20-273R Yànmén 雁门, 45-855R Yàngbì 漾濞, 9-17-9-18n Yáng Dēng 杨登, 20-297R Yáng Gānzhēn 杨干贞, 22-333R, 22-337, 22-340R, 22-345R, 23-346, 23-347R, 23-353R, 23-362R Yángjūmiē 阳苴哶, 15-139R, 15-139n, 16-178R Yáng Shèn 杨慎, 5, 6, 39-497, 46-552, 48-29R, 48-29*n*, 48-29-48-31*n*, 48-43R, 48-55R Yángshì 杨氏, 22-346R, 23-347R, 23-355R, 25-368R, 25-389R, 45-873R Yáng Yìzhēn 杨义贞, 29-455R, 29-455R Yáng Yuānhǎi 杨渊海, 38-621R, 38-621R, 38-636R, 41-708R, 41-721R Yáng Zhì 杨智, 39-665R Yáoshùn 尧舜, 47-22R Yáozhōu 姚州, 12-58R, 12-66R, 14-106n Yèjìnghú 叶镜湖, 25-365R Yí 夷, 9-10R, 10-31R, 14-109R, 21-305R, 46-876R Yícáo 仪曹, 48-27R Yíláo 夷獠, 19-26oR Yìmóuxún 异牟寻, 14-131R, 14-133, 15-134R, 15-139R, 16-183R, 16-185R, 16-186R, 16-188R Yītǒngzhì 一统志, 48-25R Yìzhōu 益州, 10-29R, 44-829R, 47-12R Yìzōng 懿宗, 19-256R Yínshēng 银生, 15-149R Yǐngchuān Hóu 颍川侯, 44-817R Yìngdào 应道, 17-210R Yǒngchāng 永昌, 5, 8-2R, 10-29R, 13-96R, 15-153R, 35-567R, 45-853R

Yōng Kǎi 雍闓, 10-26R, 10-27R Yōngxī 雍熙, 27-421R Yòngxiū 用修, 48-29R, 48-29n Yǒngzhēn 永贞, 32-507R Yōngzhōu 邕州, 19-262R Yú 虞, 42-738R, 42-738n, 42-738n Yùàn Shān 玉案山, 37-603R Yùlóng Shān 玉龙山, 15-164R Yùshǐ 御史, 12-6oR Yuán 元, 33-531R, 33-539R, 34-553R, 34-560R, 35-564R, 35-569R, 36-583R, 37-594R, 37-595R, 37-595n, 44-836R, 44-839R, 45-856R, 46-891R Yuán Cháo 元朝, 11-49n Yuánfēng 元丰, 29-462R Yuánfēng 元封, 45-868R Yuánfú 元符, 30-470R Yuánhé 元和, 17-213R, 17-218R Yuánshī 元师, 35-576R Yuán Shìzǔ 元世祖, 35-565R, 44-830R Yuánshuàifǔ 元帅府, 34-555R Yuán Zī 袁滋, 16-195n Yuāndú 身毒, 48-37R Yuè Hóu 岳侯, 29-457R Yuèxī 越巂, 20-277R Yuèfǔ 乐府, 39-650R Yúnnán 云南, 5, 6, 8, 10-29R, 13-87R, 14-106R, 14-109R, 15-146R, 25-365R, 27-415R, 34-462, 34-462, 36-584R, 37-595n, 38-618R, 39-646R, 39-668-39-669n, 40-689R, 41-718R, 41-730R, 47-2R, 47-14R, 47-17R, 48-63R Yúnnán Tújīng Zhìshū 云南图经志书, 23-000 Yúnnánwáng 云南王, 13-77R Yúnnán Zhì 云南志, 9-9 Zànpǔ Zhōng 赞普锺, 14-122n, 14-123R, 14-132R

Zhàzhǔ 栅主, 31-489R Zhāng 张, 10-28R Zhāng Lèjǐnqiú 张乐尽求, 11-35R, 11-39 Zhāng Qiān 张骞, 47-8R Zhāng Qiántuō 张乾拖, 14-107R, 14-109R Zhāngshì 张氏, 11-37R, 11-45R, 45-871R Zhāng Xīqiáo 张希乔, 39-665R Zhāng Yuánhēng 张元亨, 44-816R Zhāng Yúnhàn 张云汉, 48-34R Zhào 诏, 9-10R, 9-11R, 9-12R, 9-13R, 9-14R, 9-15R, 9-16R, 13-79R, 13-82R, 13-84R, 13-86R, 13-90R Zhào Shànzhèng 赵善政, 22-337, 22-338R, 22-341R Zhàoshì 赵氏, 22-335R, 22-337R, 22-338R, 23-348R, 45-873R Zhènfǔ 镇抚, 45-853R, 45-854R Zhēnguān 贞观, 11-48R Zhēnmíng 贞明, 21-300R Zhēnyuán 贞元, 16-181R, 17-208R Zhèng Huí 郑回, 14-110R, 16-181R, 21-313, 21-314R Zhèng Lóngdǎn 郑隆亶, 22-330R Zhèng Mǎisì 郑买嗣, 21-308R, 21-314R Zhèng Mín 郑旻, 22-321R Zhèngshì 郑氏, 21-313R, 21-313, 22-334R, 22-336R, 22-337, 22-340R, 45-872R Zhèngzhì 正治, 28-437R Zhì 志, 48-45R Zhìdà 至大, 37-597R Zhīfǔ 知府, 38-611R Zhìyuán 至元, 35-576R Zhìzhèng 至正, 38-612R Zhìzhì 至治, 26-399R, 37-603R Zhōnghé 中和, 20-294R Zhōngtǒng 中统, 35-564R Zhōngxīng 中兴, 21-303R Zhōngyuè 中岳, 15-145R Zhōu 州, 9-14R, 12-61R, 15-147R, 18-231R, 19-267R, 45-863R Zhōu Cháo 周朝, 46-889n Zhūgé Liàng 诸葛亮, 10-23, 10-25R, 10-25-10-26n Zǐ子, 48-29n Zīzhì Tōngjiàn 资治通鉴, 20-284R, 46-905R Zǒngguǎn 总管, 34-461, 34-462, 34-562R, 35-462, 35-462, 35-563R, 35-572R, 35-574R, 35-581R, 36-586R, 36-588R, 36-590R, 36-591R, 36-592R, 38-609R, 38-612R, 41-725R, 44-810R

Zōngzhèng 宗正, 20-292R

Zūnshèng 尊圣, 23-349R